Al JUMUAH
YOUR GUIDE TO AN ISLAMIC LIFE

A Dictionary of Islamic Words and Expressions

Arabic- English
With an Arabic Index

Prof. Mahmoud Isma'il Saleh

Second Edition

1423 AH / 2002 AD

بسم الله الرحمن الرحيم

Editor's Note

This dictionary is intended to satisfy a long-standing need on the part of English-speaking Muslims for a dictionary with which to comprehend what they do not fully understand when they read the Noble Qur'an and the authentic Sunnah. During the past twenty-five years progress has been made in the field of Islamic lexicography; and this has highlighted the need for documentation of Islamic words and expressions in a novel fashion.

This dictionary is also intended to fulfill the needs of those engaged in such a sacred task as propagating Islam, which requires a reliable bilingual dictionary that is apt to transfer- in a communicative manner - concepts underlying cultural differences between the two languages in question.

Besides, one of the strongest motives behind the compilation of this dictionary is the fact that Islam is not only the religion of over one billion people who constitute just under one fifth of the world's population (most of whom are

non-native speakers of Arabic); it is also the fastest growing religion outside its own members.

The entries have been drafted with the primary purpose of producing an overall-descriptive comprehension dictionary that covers, among many others, topics of faith, monotheism, jurisprudence, and financial transactions. Particular importance has been attached to the provision of numerous transparent examples, which are used in contextual strings.

Although there can be no doubt that this dictionary many suffer from shortcomings, they are of a kind inevitable in a pioneering work.

All the people involved in the production of this work hope that you find it useful and informative, and we welcome any comments from users.

Dr. Abdulrahman Aljamhoor

Translation Unit of Al-Jumuah Magazine

Aaj@aljumuah.com
Safar 22, 1423 AH (May 5, 2002 AD)

Introduction

It is a well known fact that any reasonable understanding of Islam requires some knowledge of the language of the Qur'an, Arabic, due to the following reasons:

1. The two main sources of Islamic teachings, the Qur'an and the Sunnah, are in Arabic. There have been many attempts to render the meanings of these into other languages through translation. However, no translation can really convey the whole meaning of the original text, especially of religious or literary nature. For no two languages in the world have exact equivalents for their lexicons, even if they belong to the same family of languages. Naturally, the gap increases with the distance between the relevant languages in history and culture; the greater the difference (such as between Arabic and English) the wider the gap, and it is hard even for the cleverest of translators to close it. Besides, many Qur'anic verses and words have more than one meaning, which a translator has to choose from; thus, the translation is by nature restricted and incomplete in such cases. Examples abound even in one "suurah" ('chapter') of the Qur'an, the first one, where we find words like, "al-Hamd", "ar-raHmaan, ar-raHiim" that are rich with meanings and implications which have only been partially conveyed in the various translations.
2. The bulk of references on various Islamic subjects have been written in Arabic. For even scholars living in non-Arabic speaking lands have most often made their valuable contributions in Arabic. There are tens of thousands of books on Islamic issues and topics, including Qur'anic exegesis, theology, jurisprudence, principles of Qur'anic exegesis, tajweed ('rules of correct recitation of the

Qur'an'), principles of hadeeth ('prophetic traditions') authentication, principles of Islamic jurisprudence ...etc. Very little of these references have been translated into other languages.

3. There are many key terms and expressions, such as "raHmaan, Salaah, zakaah, 'umrah, 'ishaa', tajwiid, laa Hawla walaa quwwata illaa bi-llaah" which are not easy to translate into other languages.

Since the majority of the followers of Islam are not native speakers of Arabic, and many of them may not have the chance to learn it properly, translation has been resorted to, however incomplete it may be. But even good translators always find it difficult to translate the special terms from Arabic. A cursory look at the translation of various Islamic works would reveal the discrepancies between the Arabic text and its translation, on one hand, and the different renderings of the same Arabic terms by different translators or even by the same translator at different times.

Attempts have been made by Muslim scholars to compile glossaries and dictionaries of Islamic terms to help both translators and readers of Arabic texts. But we find that despite the efforts made in these works, none of them is fully satisfactory for some reason or another, including the background of the author and his/her area of interest and the arrangement of the entries.

It is with the objective of filling some of the gaps or shortcomings in these attempts that this *Dictionary of Islamic Words and Expressions* has been prepared.

The present dictionary has the following characteristics:

i. It is written with the speaker of English in mind, though speakers of Arabic will find it useful as well. A knowledge of Arabic is not required. Therefore, the entries have been arranged according to their romanized pronunciation. This is accompanied by the word or expression in Arabic script, followed by an explanation or commentary.

ii. The words and phrases have been selected on the basis of their special technical senses and/or their frequency in the Islamic religious writings. Often, general meanings and senses are ignored in the *Dictionary.*

iii. An index of the words or expressions in Arabic script, according to the rules of Arabic alphabetical system, is given at the end of the dictionary for the benefit of Arab users of *the Dictionary.*

iv. The comments or definitions are given in a brief and simple manner. Wherever appropriate, references to relevant verses of the Holy Qur'an are made. The reader will find more information there.

Method of Using:

1. The Dictionary, as mentioned earlier, is arranged according to the romanized script and English alphabetical system. (A transliteration table is given below.) Therefore, Arabic words that have small and capital letters (e.g., "h, H˙or s, S") are grouped together, though these symbols represent different Arabic letters and sounds.

2. A special mention should be made of the case of the words that include (' and ' – hamzah and 'ayn) consonants, such as "'adab"

and " 'iddah " These are arranged according to the vowels that follow them, since they are not letters of the English alphabet.

3. In the transliteration, a distinction is made between (-iyy) as in "nabiyy" ('prophet') and (-ii) as "fii" ('in'). This makes the word easier to spot when it occurs in combinations, such as "nabiyy-uun" ('prophets') or "nabiyy-uk" ('your prophet')...etc.

4. The taa' marbuuTah (feminine marker in nouns) is usually written (h), which is the pause form. But in cases where it is normally pronounced for liaison purposes, as in "zakaat al-fiTr" it is written (t).

5. The definite article (al-) is assimilated to the consonants that follow them, such as "al-Salaah" (which is transliterated "aS-Salaah" according to its pronunciation in Arabic). This makes the word easier to read by non-native speakers of Arabic.

6. Normally, nouns are given in their singular forms, but if the plural form is frequently used or it is heard more often than its singular form, then the word is given in the plural form too.

7. Arabic nouns that have irregular plural forms (and a few others) are normally followed by their plural form or singular forms (if the entry word is in the plural form) in parentheses (with pl. meaning plural and sg. meaning singular). Examples: "khuluq (pl. akhlaaq)" and "naSaaraa (sg. naSraaniyy)". This makes it easier for the reader to recognize them when they are encountered in both their singular and plural forms.

8. Verbs, which are normally given in their basic past tense forms, are accompanied by the present tense forms between parentheses, because the reader would most often see them in these two forms.

9. Wherever appropriate, cross-reference is made to other entries in *the Dictionary,* which is indicated by putting the Arabic word between double quotes.

10. Double quotes are used for Arabic words in quotations and for cross-reference purposes. A word in double quotes is found in its place in the *Dictionary*. The reader may refer to it if he so wishes. Single quotes, on the other hand, are used to give the English meaning of the Arabic words and expressions in the comment/ definition part.

I sincerely hope that this *Dictionary* will be of some help to the readers of Islamic works and the seekers of knowledge about Islam and its lofty teachings.

Mahmoud Isma'il Saleh, Ph.D.,
Professor of Applied Linguistics

London, Rabii' ath-thaanii, 1420 AH (August, 1999 AD)

Transliteration Table

For practical reasons, the following system of transliteration of Arabic letters has been adopted.

Arabic Letter	Name	Transliteration
ا	'alif	aa (if a vowel)
ء	hamza	'
ب	baa	b
ت	taa	t
ث	thaa	th
ج	jiim	j
ح	Haa	H
خ	khaa	kh
د	daal	d
ذ	dhaal	dh
ر	raa	r
ز	zaay	z
س	siin	s
ش	shiin	sh
ص	Saad	S
ض	Daad	D

ط	Taa	T
ظ	Zaa	Z
ع	‘ayn	‘
غ	ghayn	gh
ف	faa	f
ق	qaaf	q
ك	kaaf	k
ل	laam	l
م	miim	m
ن	nuun	n
ه	haa	h
و	waaw	w or uu (for the vowel)
ي	yaa	y or ii (for the vowel)
ـَ	fatHa	a (short vowel as in ago)
ـُ	Damma	u (short vowel as in put)
ـِ	kasra	i (short vowel as in fit)

A

'aabid (pl. 'ubbaad)

عابد (عبّاد)

worshipper, devotee

A person devoted to worshipping Allah.

'aabiq آبــق

runaway slave

A slave who runs away from his master for no legitemate reason.

'aad عــاد

people of 'Ad

A people of the Arabian Peninsula to whom Allah sent the Prophet "huud" (Hood). It is said that they lived in the Yemen area. (See, e.g., the Qur'an, 11: 50-60).

'aadaab (sg. 'adab)

آداب (أدب)

manners, rules of conduct

Good morals and manners are mentioned by the Prophet (PBUH) as criteria of superiority of a believer over others. A Muslim is supposed to observe the laws of Islam in every aspect of his life, including the daily conduct of affairs (be that social, economic, political...).

'aadam آدم

Adam

The first human being created by Allah. His mate was Eve. (See the Qur'an, 2: 30-38 for references to his creation, sin, repentance...)

'aadil عادل

just, fair

'aakhir (al--) الآخر

The Last

A Divine Attribute of Allah. The One after Whom no one and nothing exists, because He is the Only Everlasting Being.

'aakhirah (al--) الآخرة

the Hereafter

Belief in life in the Hereafter (in the physical and spiritual senses) is one of the six corner-stones of "'iimaan" (faith) in Islam.

'aakil ar-riba آكل الرّبـــا

devourer of usury

Anyone who lends people money with interest / usury is guilty of devouring it, which means he purchases his food with money earned in that manner.

'aalam al-barzakh عالم البرزخ

intermediate state

See "barzakh".

'aal 'imraan آل عمران

family of Imran

In Chapter 3 of the Qur'an, this refers to the family of Maryam (Mary), the mother of 'iisaa (Jesus) (PBUH).

'aal al-bayt آل البيت

family of the Prophet (PBUH)

Literally, the members of the household. The term is used to refer to the wives of the Prophet (PBUH), his offspring and Muslim uncles and cousins, who were forbidden to accept "sadaqah".

'aal muHammad آل محمّد

family of Muhammad

See 'aal al-bayt.

'aalaa (yuulii) آلى (يُولي)

to decide or make 'iilaa'

See 'iilaa' for the special sense of deciding to desert one's wife in bed.

'aalam al-ghayb عالم الغيب

the unseen world

Literally, 'the world of the unseen,' including the future and the Hereafter, which is known only to Allah.

'aalam ash-shahaadah

عالم الشّـــهادة

the visible world

The present material world, as opposed to the Hereafter or the future, for example, which are not visible or known to us. The opposite of " 'aalam al-ghayb " (the unseen world).

'aalim (pl. 'ulamaa')

عالـــم (علماء)

scholar

In Islamic texts, the term usually refers to a scholar specializing in religious fields of knowledge.

'aam al-bu'uuth عام البعوث

Year of Deputations

The ninth year of the Hijrah is called the Year of Deputations, because deputations came from all over Arabia to the Prophet (PBUH) at Medina to declare their conversion to Islam and to learn about it.

'aam al-fiil عام الفيل

Year of the Elephant

The year 570 AD, when the Abyssinian viceroy in Yemen decided to invade Makkah and destroy the Ka'bah with an army that had elephants, but they were all miraculously destroyed. (See the Qur'an, 105). It was in this year that the Prophet Muhammad (PBUH) was born.

'aamana (yu'min) آمن (يؤمن)

to believe

When the verb is used in an unqualified manner in the Qur'an it refers to believing in Allah.

'aamil (pl. 'ummaal) عامل (عمّال)

governor

In classical use, the governor appointed by the caliph to rule a certain area in his name.

'aaqib (al--) العاقب

the Last

The reference is to Prophet Muhammad (PBUH) being the last Prophet and Messenger of Allah.

'aaqilah عاقلة

blood money payers

Relatives, such as ancestors or descendants who are responsible (with the murderer) for paying the blood money to the family of the murdered victim.

'aaqil 1 عاقل 1

wise

'aaqil 2 عاقل 2

sane

Legally, this means someone who is sound of mind; therefore, he is responsible for his actions.

'aariyah عارية

loan

Something given on loan to somebody.

'aariyyah عاريّة

loaned object

Something borrowed from someone. Naturally, it should be returned intact as much as possible.

'aaS(in) (pl. 'uSaah)

عاص (عصاة)

sinner, rebellious

The term means 'sinner' if he is rebellious against Divine commands; otherwise, it means a persistently disobedient person.

'aashuuraa' عاشوراء

tenth of Muharram

The tenth day of the first month of Islamic calendar. It is sunnah to fast this day, with one day before or after it. On this day also al-Husayn (grandson of the Prophet {PBUH}) was martyred at Karbilaa' in Iraq.

'aataa (yu'tii) az-zakaah

آتى (يؤتي) الزكاة

give alms, pay the poor dues

Paying "az-zakaah" (poor dues) is one of the five pillars of Islam. It is paid on savings, commodities, live stock as well as agricultural produce.

'aayah 1 (pl. 'aayaat)

آية 1 (آيات)

sign

In the Qur'an we are told that all types of creation are signs from Allah for man to ponder upon, hence reach the conclusion of His greatness.

'aayah 2(pl.'aayaat) آية 2 (آيات)

verse

A verse from the Qur'an (part of a "suurah" {chapter}).

'aayah 3(pl.'aayaat) آية 3 (آيات)

proof, evidence

'aayat al-kursiy آية الكرسي

Verse of the Throne

This refers to verse 256 of Chapter 2 of the Holy Qur'an. It consists of ten sentences about Allah, giving some of

His Attributes. The Prophet (PBUH) strongly recommended reciting it after regular "Salaah" as well as before going to bed, as a source of protection for a Muslim from Satan and other evils.

'aazar آزر

Terah

Prophet Abraham's father.

'abaaHa (yubiiH) أباح (يبيح)

to permit or make lawful

'abad أبد

forever

This is usually contrasted with "'azal" (time immemorial). It refers to time that has no end.

'abd [1] (pl. 'abiid) عبد [1] (عَبيد)

male slave, bondsman

A slave was a man captured in a just war or the son of a bondswoman.

'abd [2] pl. 'ibaad) عبد [2] (عِباد)

servant

In the context of man's relationship to Allah, the word is usually translated 'servant'.

'ablagha [1] (yubligh)

أبلغ [1] (يبلّغ)

to mature, to become of age

To reach the age of puberty.

'ablagha [2] (yubligh)

أبلغ [2] (يبلّغ)

to convey

To convey a message.

'abraar (sg. barr(un) أبرار (بر)

righteous people

'abTala (yubTil) أبطل (يبطل)

to invalidate

To make something or some action invalid, such as laughing which makes "Salaah" (prayer) invalid.

'adaa' 1 أداء [1]

performance

Performing a religious rite, such as formal prayers and pilgrimage to Mecca.

'adaa' 2 أداء [2]

payment

Paying back a loan or debt.

'adaalah عدالـة

justice, integrity

In the science of hadeeth, the term means the integrity (of the narrator).

'adab(pl.'aadaab) أدب (آداب)

rule of behaviour / etiquette

See " 'aadaab ".

'addaa (yu'addii) أدّى (يؤدّي)

to do

In the case of "Salaah" (formal prayer) this means 'to perform' while for "zakaah" it means paying it.

'addaba (yu'addib)

أدب (يؤدّب)

to teach manners

'adhaab عذاب

punishment, torture

'adhaab al-qabr عذاب القَبر

torture of the grave

The torture sinners and unbelievers suffer in their graves, starting with the punishment upon giving the wrong answers to the questions put by "munkar wa nakiir".

'adhaan أذان

call to prayer

The call to any of the five daily prayers.

'adhdhana (yu'adhdhin)

أذّن (يؤذّن)

to call to prayer

To say the "'adhaan" loudly for people to know it is time for "Salaah".

'adhkaar (sg. dhikr)

أذكار (ذكر)

verbal prayers, invocations

Any prayers in which one glorifies, praises or seeks Allah's forgiveness.

'ad'iyah ma'thuurah

أدعية مأثورة

traditional prayers

Often this refers to the prayers that are reported in the traditions of the Prophet Muhammad (PBUH).

'aDl عضل

prevention from marriage

Preventing a woman from marriage by various means either by the guardian or a former husband.

'adl (al--) العدل

The Ever Just

A Divine Attribute of Allah. The One Who is never unfair in His decisions.

'adl (pl. 'uduul) عدل (عدول)

man of integrity

As an adjective, the term is used in the science of hadeeth in describing narrators, and in describing witnesses too, to mean a person of integrity, Allah-fearing and honest.

'adl عدل

justice, fair dealing

The Qur'an teaches Muslims to be just in dealing even with enemies. (5: 2 and 8).

'afaaDa (yufiiD) min arafaat

أفاض (يفيض) من عرفات

to move from 'Arafah

To flow or move away from 'Arafah /'Arafaat at the end of the ninth day (after sunset) of the month of pilgrimage.

'afiif عفيف

chaste, dignified

The term covers both chastity and self-respect, in the sense that a person does not commit illicit sexual intercourses and does not debase himself in other ways.

'aflaHa (yfliHu) أفلح (يفلح)

to be successful, to prosper

This word expresses the meaning of success in its most comprehensive sense, both in this world and the Hereafter. (See the Qur'an, 23: 1 and 9: 9).

'afTara (yufTir) أفطر (يفطر)

to break one's fast

To have breakfast or to break one's fast by eating or drinking, for example.

'afuww (al--) العفو

The Supreme Pardoner

A Dinvine Attribute of Allah. The One Who not only forgives but also erases all sins from the records of His servants.

'afw عفو

forgiveness

'aHaadiith (sg. Hadiith)

أحاديث (حديث)

prophetic traditions

For a definition see "Hadiith".

'aHbaas (sg. Hubs)

أحباس (حبس)

endowments
See "Hubs".

'ahd (pl. 'uhuud) عهد (عهود)

covenant, solemn promise

'aHdatha 1 (yuHdith)

أحدث 1 (يحدث)

to make "Hadath"
To do something that causes ritual impurity, such as passing wind or urinating.

'aHdatha 2 (yuHdith)

أحدث 2 (يحدث)

to innovate
To do something in the religion that was not taught or observed by the Prophet (PBUH).

'aHkaam (sg. Hukm)

أحكام (حكم)

rulings
There are degrees and types of rulings in Islam, according to which every act is judged: obligatory, strongly recommended, plausible, not recommended (implausible), forbidden.

'ahl al'ahwaa' أهل الأهواء

libertines
People who follow their whims in their words and actions.

'ahl adh-dhimmah أهل الذّمّة

proteges of Islamic state
Christians and Jews who live in peace in an Islamic State and pay the "jizyah" (protection money or head tax).

'ahl al-bayt أهل البيت

Household of Muhammad
Members of the household of the Prophet Muhammad (PBUH). See "'aal al-bayt".

'ahl al-fatrah أهل الفترة

people of the interval
People who lived in a period during which no particular messenger from Allah was sent to them.

'ahl al-kabaa'ir أهل الكبائر

major sinners
People who commit major sins. (See 'kabiirah (pl. kabaa'ir)".)

'ahl al-kahf أهل الكهف

people of the cave
The young people referred to in the Qur'an 18:9-22. They miraculously spent about 300 years asleep in the cave where they had saught refuge earlier.

'ahl al-kitaab أهل الكتاب

People of the Book
This refers to Jews and/or Chrisitans. It means the people with (originally) revealed scriptures.

'ahl al-qiblah أهل القبلة

Muslims (people of the qiblah)
The people who pray towards the Ka'bah.

'ahl ar-ra'y أهل الرّأي

men of opinion
Scholars, like Abu Hanifah, who give weight to analogy and logical deductions as a source of Islamic law. They are contrasted with "'ahl an-naql' or conservatives who insist on textual evidence (Qur'an and hadeeth).

'aHmad أحمد

most praise worthy
This is one of the names of the Prophet Muhammad (PBUH)). His coming was foretold by Jesus (PBUH) by this name. (See the Qur'an, 61: 6).

'ahsana-llaahu 'azaa'akum
أحسن الله عزاءكم

Sincere condolences!
One form of prayer said to a bereaved person, asking Allah to console him.

'aHSana (yuHSinu)
أحصن (يحصن)

to be chaste
To protect oneself from illicit sexual relations. (See "muHSan / muHSanah").

'a'immat al-Hadiith
أئمّة الحديث

leading scholars of hadeeth
Scholars who are upright, have strong memory and are well versed in matters of the text and science of prophetic traditions.

'ajal (pl. 'aajaal) أجل (آجال)

appointed time

This term applies to any appointed time. It is sometimes used to refer to the end of one's life (death).

'ajnabiyy (pl. 'ajaanib) أجنبي (أجانب)

stranger

The terms refers to someone who is not "maHram" to a female person. Therefore, he should not be alone with her.

'ajr (pl. 'ujuur) أجر (أجور)

wage, reward

In its general sense the word means wage or payment made for service rendered. But in the spiritual sense it refers to reward from Allah.

'ajr (al--) wath-thawaab الأجر و الثّواب

rewards and compensations

Rewards and compensations given by Allah to a Muslim for any good deed, including refraining from a sinful act.

'akh min ar-raDaa'(ah) أخ من الرّضاع / الرّضاعة

foster-brother

We may also hear "'akh bir-raDaa'". A male person who shared the suckling of milk with another person of a different mother and father.

'akhlaaq (sg. khuluq) أخلاق (خلق)

morals, moral values

Good conduct is an essential part of the religion. The Prophet Muhammad (PBUH) is reported to have said, "I have been sent only to perfect good morals and conduct." Moral values in Islam are objectively determined by the Qur'an and the teachings of the Prophet (PBUH).

'akhlafa (yukhlif) أخلف (يخلف)

to forswear, break a promise

Breaking a promise is considered by the Prophet (PBUH) one of the four signs of a "munaafiq" (hypocrite).

'akl ar-ribaa أكل الرّبا

devouring usury

See "'aakil ar-ribaa".

'alaamaat an-nubuwwah

علامات النّبوّة

signs of prophethood

Signs that prove that someone is a true Prophet of Allah.

'alaamaat as-saa'ah

علامات السّاعة

signs of the Hour

Signs of the approach of the Day of Judgement, one of the greatest being the sun's rising from the West.

'alayhi aS-Salaah was-salaam

عليه الصّلاة و السّلم

Peace and blessings be upon him

An expression usually said upon the mention of the Prophet Muhammad (PBUH) or his name, out of reverence. Sometimes, it is shortened to "'alayhi as-salaam" (Peace be upon him -- PBUH).

'alayhi as-salaam عليه السّلام

Peace be upon him

An expression a Muslim says upon the mention of any Prophet of Allah or hearing reference to him. It is often abbreviated as (PBUH).

'aliim (al--) العليم

The Omniscient

A Divine Attribute of Allah. The One Who knows everything, past, present or future, open or secret.

'aliyy (al--) العلي

The Ever-Exalted

A Dinvine Attribute of Allah. The One Who is Exalted above everyone and everything.

Allaah الله

God / Allah

In Arabic there are two words for 'god' in English: "'ilaah'" which means any deity and "allaah" which means the One and Only God. Therefore some Muslim writers insist on using the word Allah when reference is made to God (in the capital g sense.) Naturally, this does not mean that a Muslim worships a special God of Muslims. On the contrary, the third verse of Chapter I of the Qur'an clearly says; "Lord and Cherisher of the worlds/

universes". In another verse Muslims are instructed to tell the People of the Book (Christians and Jews): "We believe in that which has been revealed to us and revealed to you; our God and your God is One, and unto Him we surrender." (the Qur'an 29:46).

The Prophet of Islam, Muhammad (PBUH) has told us that God has niety-nine attributes, called "al-'asmaa' al-Husnaa" ('the Most Beautiful Names'), given in the appendix of the Dictionary. In fact, some of these attributes/ names are found capitalized in the verses below. The following sets of verses from the Qur'an give us a glimpse of the concept of God in Islam:

1. "Say: He is God, the One! God, the eternally Besought of all! He begets not nor was begotten. And there is none comparable unto him." (Chapter 112: 1-4).

2. "The Originator of the heavens and the earth! How

can He have a child, when there is for Him no consort, when He created all things and is Aware of all things? Such is God, your Lord. There is no god save Him, the Creator of all things, so worship Him. And He takes care of all things. Vision comprehends Him not, but He comprehends (all) vision. He is the Subtle, the Aware." (6:101-103)

3. "God there is no god but He, the Living, the Everlasting. Slumber seizes Him not, neither sleep; to Him belongs all that is in the heavens and the earth. Who is there that shall intercede with Him save by His leave? He knows what lies before them and what is behind them, and they comprehend not anything of His knowledge save such as He wills. His Throne comprises the heavens and earth; the preserving of them wearies Him not; He is the All-high, the All-glorious." (2:256 "Verse of the Throne".)

4. "...Like Him there is naught (nothing); He is the All-hearing, the All-seeing." (42:11)

'allaahu 'akbar الله أكبر

Allah is Greater /the Greatest

This expression means both greater in the comparative form and greatest, in the superlative form. It is said to remind one that no one is greater than Allah; therefore, we should not fear any but Him.

'allaahumma اللّهم

O Allah / Allah!

Usually, this expression is used in supplications, such as " allaahumma – ghfirlii " (O Allah, forgive me!).

'amaan (al--) الأمان

security

A pledge given to someone (especially from the enemy camp) for his/ her safety and security.

'amaanah [1] أمانة [1]

honesty, trustworthiness

An important quality of a good believer who should be honest and trustworthy.

'amaanah [2] **(pl.'amaanaat)** أمانة [2] (أمانات)

trust, responsibility

Something one is entrusted with to keep and preserve, which could be material or moral / religious.

'amah (pl. imaa') أمة (إماء)

slave girl, bondswoman

'amal (pl. 'a'maal) عمل (أعمال)

deed

Anything one does. Sometimes, it includes even words said by a person.

'amat allaah أمة الله

female person, servant of Allah

Literally, it means the slave girl or bondswoman of Allah. It is the feminine counterpart of "'abdullah" (the slave of Allah).

'amiir al-mu'miniin أمير المؤمنين

prince / leader of the faithful

This was the term coined by Caliph Umar ibn al-Khattab, the second Righteous Caliph,

to refer to himself and other caliphs (successors to the Prophet Muhammad {PBUH}).

'amma (ya'umm) أمّ (يؤمّ)

to lead

To lead worshippers in a congregational prayer.

'amr (pl. 'awaamir) أمر (أوامر)

order, command, decree

This noun is derived from the verb "amara" which means to command or order.

'amr bil-ma'ruuf أمر بالمعروف

enjoyning what is right

This means both teaching and enjoining what is good and right. The complementary act to this is "nahy 'an al-munkar"(forbidding/ stopping what is evil and wrong).

'amwaal (sg. maal) أموال (مال)

wealth, possessions

Literally, "maal" means money. But it is often used to mean anything that a person possesses.

'anbiyaa' (nabiyy) أنبياء (نبيّ)

prophets

See "nabiyy".

'anSaar (sg. 'anSaariyy) أنصار (أنصاريّ)

supporters

See anSaariyy.

'anSaariyy (pl. 'anSaar) أنصاريّ (أنصار)

supporter

One of the residents of Medina who welcomed the Prophet Muhammad (PBUH) and his immigrant companions. The term is contrasted with "muhaajir" ('immigrant' to Medina).

'aqaa'id (sg. 'aqiidah) عقائد (عقيدة)

articles of faith, theology

The general meaning of the word is 'beliefs' or 'articles of faith', but it is also used short for "'ilm al-'aqaa'id" (the study of beliefs or articles of faith), hence theology.

'aqaama (yuqiim) aS-Salaah أقام (يقيم) الصّلاة

to perform the salat, announce readiness for it .

To perform the regular formal prayer. It is also used to mean

saying the "'iqaamah", announcing the readiness for congregational worship.

'aqd al-qiraan عقد القران

joining in wedlock, marriage

Performing a marriage ceremony. It could mean marriage.

'aqd an-nikaaH عقد النّكاح

joining in wedlock, marriage

Performing a marriage ceremony. It could mean marriage.

'aqiidah (pl. 'aqaa'id) عقيدة

faith, belief

Something that one has a firm belief in; it is often used to refer to the religion.

'aqiiqah عقيقة

'aqeeqah

Celebrating the birth of a new baby, usually by slaughtering a sheep and distributing its meat or making a meal with it for a group of people.

'aql [1] (pl. 'uquul) عقل [1] (عقول)

sanity

In legal terms, this refers to the ability to reason and think.

'aql [2] عقل [2]

mind, reason

The capacity that enables one to think.

'aqsama (yuqsim)

أقسم (يقسم)

to take an oath, swear by Allah

Even when the word "billaah" is not said, this verb usually means swearing to Allah, meaning 'Allah is my witness to something'. In Islam one should not swear by anyone or anything other than Allah.

'aqTa'a (yuqTi') أقطع (يُقطع)

to grant land

To grant a piece of land, usually by a Muslim ruler.

'arafah / 'arafaat عرفة / عرفات

plain of 'Arafah

The plain near Makkah where pilgrims spend the ninth day of the month of pilgrimage. Stay in 'Arafah is one of the major rites, without which pilgrimage is considered null.

'araja (ya'ruj) عرج (يعرج)

to ascend

To go up to heaven.

'arHaam (sg. raHim)

أرحام (رحم)

wombs, blood relatives

In religious texts, the second meaning is probably more frequently intended.

'arkaan al-iimaan أركان الإيمان

pillars of faith

There are six pillars or corner-stones of faith in Islam: belief in Allah, theangels, the revealed scriptures, Allah's messengers, the Hereafter (including physical resurrection and life after death) and predestination. Five of these are mentioned in the Qur'an (2:177).

'arkaan al-islaam أركان الإسلام

pillars of Islam

There are five pillars or corner-stones of Islam, mentioned by the Prophet Muhammad (PBUH): testifying that there is no deity except Allah and that Muhammad is His messenger, performing the five daily prayers, paying the poor dues, fasting Ramadan and pilgrimage to Makkah (for those who can afford it).

'arraaf عرّاف

soothsayer

A person who claims to know the unseen and the future. It is forbidden for a Muslim to resort to such people for consultation.

'arsh (pl. 'uruush)

عرش (عروش)

throne

'aSaa (ya'Sii) عصى (يعصي)

to disobey, to sin

'aSabah عصبة

paternal male relatives / agnates

Some writers have defined this term as "male relatives on the father's side who take the remaining estate, if any, after the heirs with fixed shares have received their shares."

'aSabiyyah عصبيّة

partisanship

Unfair partisanship and prejudice are forbidden by Islam, because a Muslim should be fair and just even to enemies.

'asbaaT (sg. sibT)

أسباط (سبط)

grandsons, Israelite tribes

In the Qur'an, the word is used in both senses: children of Prophet Jacob (Qur'an 2:136) Israelite tribes (7: 160). In Islamic writings, we also have the expression "sibT rasuuli-llaah" referring to a grandson of the Prophet (PBUH): al-Hasan or al-Husain.

'aSHaab al-aykah

أصحاب الأيكة

people of the Thicket

The reference is to the people of Prophet Shu'ayb. (See, e.g., the Qur'an, 15:78; 26:176-190.)

'aSHaab al-fiil أصحاب الفيل

people of the elephant

The army led by the Abyssinian king Abrahah to destroy the Ka'aba in 570 G.E. (See reference in the Qur'an, Chapter 105.)

'aSHaab

'aSHaab al-jannah

أصحاب الجنّة

people of Paradise

Reference is usually to the believers.

The exception is the phrase found in chapter 68 of the Qur'an, verse 17, where it means 'owners of the garden / farm'.

'aSHaab al-kahf

أصحاب الكهف

people of the cave

See "'ahl al-kahf".

'aSHaab an-naar

أصحاب النّار

people of Hell

Reference is usually to disbelievers.

'aSHaab aS-Suffah

أصحاب الصّفّة

people of the suffah

See " ahl aS-Suffah ".

'aSHaab rasuuli-llaah

أصحاب رسول الله

companions of Allah's Messenger

Muslims who met the Prophet Muhammad (PBUH) are technically known as his companions. They are the best generation of Islam, and a good Muslim should show them due respect and reverence.

'aSHaab ash-shimaal

أصحاب الشّمال

the disbelievers

The term is probably based on the fact that disbelievers will receive their records of deeds in their left hands on the Day of Judgement. (See the Qur'an, 56: 41-56).

'aSHaab al-yamiin

أصحاب اليمين

the believers

The term is probably based on the fact that believers will receive their records of deeds in their right hands on the Day of Judgement. (See the Qur'an, 56: 27-38).

'asharah (al--) al-mubashsharuun

العشرة المبَشّرون

the Ten Promised Paradise

The ten companions of Prophet Muhammad (PBUH) who were given the tidings of being among the dwellers of Paradise in the Hereafter.

'ashhur (al--) al-Hurum

الأشهر الحرم

the sacred months

The four months of “Rajab, Dhul Qi‘dah, Dhul-Hijjah” and “MuHarram”.

'ashhur al-Hajj أشهر الحجّ

months of pilgrimage

The months of “Shawwaal, Dhul-Qi‘dah” and the first ten days of “Dhul-Hijjah” are known as the months of pilgrimage.

'ashraka (yushrik) أشرك يشرك

to ascribe partners

To worship others besides Allah, or ascribe Divine attributes to them. It also includes the claim that we need intermediaries between us and Allah.

‘asiib عسيب (عُسُب)

palm branch

A palm branch stripped of its leaves. The Arabs sometimes used to write on it.

'askara (yuskir) أسكر (يسكر)

to intoxicate

To negatively affect one’s capacity of discrimination and thinking.

'aSl ('uSuul) 1 أصل (أصول) 1

principle

Principles sor foundations upon which other issues ("furuu’") are based.

'aSl ('uSuul) 2 أصل (أصول) 2

lineage

For a person, his father and grand fathers.

'asmaa' allaah al-Husnaa أسماء الله الحسنى

Most Beautiful Names of Allah

These are the ninety-nine names or Divine Attributes of Allah, such as “ar-raHmaan, al-ghafuur” (The Beneficent, the Most Forgiving). Often we find the word attribute used instead of name in this context.

'asmaa' ar-rijaal أسماء الرّجال

biographical dictionary

A special type of Islamic writing where the names of people of spcial interest (e.g., "Hadiith" narrators) are listed along with biographical information on each.

‘aSr (al--) العصر

afternoon

The time when the shadow of anything is twice its length.

'astaghfiru-llaah أستغفر الله

I ask Allah for forgiveness

This is the shortest form of “istighfaar”, which is a highly recommended act of worship and remembrance of Allah.

'athar (al--) الأثر

traditions

Sometimes, this word is used to refer to unverified traditions of the Prophet (PBUH) or sayings of his companions.

'a‘uudhu bi-llaah أعوذ بالله

I seek refuge with Allah

We may hear this expression in exclamations to express denial of wrong doing.

'awaamir (al--) wan-nawaahii الأوامر و النّواهي

injunctions and prohibitions
Teachings regarding what is required and what is forbidden in the religion.

awaamir wa nawwahii أوامر ونواهي

injunctions and prohibitions
Teachings of the religion regarding what to do or not to do.

'awHaa (yuuHii) أوحى (يوحي)

to reveal, inspire
Usually, this refers to Allah when He sends a message to a messenger of His. Very often, this is done through Archangel Gabriel. In other cases, the word may mean to prompt someone, for example, to do something.

awliyaa' (sg. waliyy) أولياء (ولـــيّ)

saints, guardians, protégés...
See the different meanings of "waliyy".

'awrah (pl. 'awraat) عورة (عورات)

private part
The term normally means the part of the body that should not be exposed to others by a Muslim. For a male, the minimum is the area between the navel and the knees. For an adult female, the whole body with the exception of the face and hands should be covered in the presence of strangers. "'"awraat" also means deficiencies or weaknesses hidden by a person from others.

'aws (al--) الأوس

the Aws tribe
One of the two major tribes that lived in Medina at the time of the Prophet Muhammad (PBUH). The other being "al-khazraj".

'awSaa (yuuSii) أوصى (يوصي)

to bequeath
According to Islamic law, shares of legal heirs (e.g., fore children , parents ,

spouse…) are not subject to the will, but are specified by the Qur'an. One of the purposes of the will is the allocation of no more than one third of the legacy for others, if one so desires, such as charity or endowments.

'awtara (yuutir) أوتر (يوتر)

to pray witr

To pray an odd number of "rak'ahs", usually one. It is sunnah for a Muslim to make his last prayer in the night a witr.

'awwaab أوّاب

oft-repenting

A person who always repents and seeks Allah's forgiveness.

'awwal (al--) الأوّل

The First

A Divine Attribute of Allah. The One before Whom no one and nothing ever existed.

'awwala (yu'awwilu) أوّل (يؤوّل)

to interpret.

'a'yaan (sg. 'ayn) أعيان

objects

Concrete objects of any nature.

'aymaan (sg. yamiin) أيمان (يمين)

Oaths

'ayn al-yaqiin عين اليقين

certainty of confirmation

The level of certainty that one reaches when he sees signs that confirm his belief in the truth of something.

'ayyaam al-biiD أيّام البيض

days of luminous nights

The middle days of the lunar month, which are 'luminous' due to the full moon. Specifically, they refer to the 13th -15th, which a Muslim is recommended to fast.

'ayyaam an-naHr أيّام النّحر

sacrifice days

The days on which a Muslim (pilgrim or not) may slaughter his sacrifice, starting with the Feast of Sacrifice ('iid al aDHaa) and the next 3 days.

'ayyaam at-tashriiq

أيّام التّشريق

tashreeq days
One of the meanings of "tashreeq" is 'meat drying', since pilgrims probably used to slaughter their sacrifices and dry the extra meat for use later. These are the 11th -13th days of Dhul-Hijjah (month of pilgrimage).

'ayyim (pl. ayaamaa)

أيم (أيامي)

single (male or female)
(See the Qur'an, 24: 32).
Another common meaning for this word is 'widow / widower'.

'ayyuub أيّوب

Job
One of the prophets mentioned in the Qur'an. He is usually cited for his exemplary patience and endurance of difficulties. (See the Qur'an, 38: 41-44).

'azal أزل

time immemorial
This is usually contrasted with " 'abad " (forever or eternal). It refers to time that has no beginning.

'aziimah (pl. 'azaa'im)

عزيمة (عزائم)

spell, incantation
Linguistically, the word means will or determination. As a term it means a spell or incantation.

'aZiim (al--) العظيم

The Ever-Magnificent
A Divine Attribute of Allah. The One Who is Great and ever glorified by others.

'aziiz (al--) العزيز

The Ever-Mighty
A Divine Attribute of Allah. The One Who is Most Powerful and High.

'azlaam (sg. zalam)

أزلام (زلم)

lot arrows
Arrow like pieces of wood that were used by Arabs for casting lots, especially in gambling. (See the Qur'an 5:3.)

'azl 1 عزل 1

stripping from authority
Removing a person from a

position of authority, such as governorship or position of a judge.

'azl [2] عزل [2]

coitus interruptus

The deliberate withdrawal of the penis from the vagina before ejaculation. In the hadeeth we find reference to this practice by early Muslims, who were not forbidden of doing it.

'azlaam أزلام

idols

Objects worshipped by pagans.

'aZZama allaahu ajrakum عظم الله أجركم

May Allah multiply your reward!

An expression normally said to a relation of a deceased person to show condolences.

B

baaghii (pl. bughaah) باغي (بغاة)

rebel

Someone who revolts against a legitimate ruler.

baa'in بائن

finally divorced

A woman who is divorced for the third and final time. She may not go back to her former husband except after the fulfillment of certain conditions. See "Talaaq baa'in".

baa'ith (al--) الباعث

The Resurrector

A Divine Attribute meaning the One Who resurrects the dead. (See the Qur'an 2: 56.) The word also means the One Who sends messengers things.(See the Qur'an 16:36.)

baaqii (al--) الباقي

The Everlasting

A Divine Attribute meaning the One Who survives everybody and everything.

baarak-allah fiik(um) بارك الله فيكم

Allah bless you.

baaraka (yubaarik) بارك (يبارك)

to bless

baari' (al--) البارئ

the Creator

A Divine Atribute meaning the One Who has created everyone and everything. The term should be compared to the words "al-khaaliq" ('Initiator of creation') and "al-muSawwir" ('Shaper of created beings'). (See the Qur'an, 59:24)

baasiT (al--) الباسط

The Expander

A Divine Attribute meaning the One Who expands everything,

including His favours and provisions bestowed on His creation by increasing them. (See, e.g., the Qur'an 13:26.)

ba'atha [1] (yab'ath)

بعث ١ (يبعث)

to resurrect, bring back to life
See "al-ba'th".

ba'atha [2] (yab'ath)

بعث ٢ (يبعث)

to send
To send a message or messenger.

baaTil [1] باطل ١

invalid
As an adjective the word means invalid, as opposed to "SaHiiH" (valid, correct).

baaTil [2] باطل ٢

falsehood
In this sense the term is contrasted with "Haqq" (truth).

baaTin (al--) الباطن

The Hidden
A Divine Attribute meaning the One Who cannot seen by anyone.

badii' (al--) البديع

The Originator
A Divine Attribute meaning the One Who makes a new creation.

baghiyy (pl. baghaayaa)

بغي (بغايا)

prostitute
Naturally, Islam forbids any sexual relations outside marriage. Clear punishments have been stated in Islamic law for prostitution.

baghy بغي

transgression, infringement
Doing injustice to others or simply transgressing.

balaagh بلاغ

declaration
It could also mean conveying a message.

balagha (yablugh) بلغ (يبلغ)

to become of age.

ballagha (yuballigh) ar-risaalah بلغ (يبلغ) الرسالة

to convey the message

baqii' (al--) البقيع

Medina Cemetry

The cemetry of Medina, near the Prophet's mosque. It is sometimes referred to as "jannat al-baqii'" or "baqii' al-gharqad". The cemetry has been in use since the days of the Prophet Muhammad (PBUH), and in it are buried his foster mother, some of his wives, children and companions.

baraa' (al--) البراء

disavowal

The term is found in the context of a Muslim's relationship with disbelievers. It is contrasted with "al-walaa'" (loyalty) which a Muslim should show to other Muslims.

baraa'ah براءة

innocence, freedom from

In the Qur'an this word is found at the beginning of Chapter 9 to mean freedom from obligation.

barakah بركة

blessing

Often, the term is used to refer to plentifulness.

barr (al--) البرُّ

The Benign

A Divine Attribute meaning the One Who is kind and good to others. (See the Qur'an 52:28.)

barru(n) (pl.'abraar) بر (أبرار)

righteous

barzakh برزخ

barrier, interval between lives

In Islamic theology, the term refers to the interval between death and resurrection, or between life in this world and life in the Hereafter.

bashiir بشير

bringer of glad tidings

One of the tasks of the Prophet was to bring glad tidings to the believers. This term is contrasted with "nadhiir" (warner).

baSiirah (pl. baSaa'ir) بصيرة (بصائر)

insight

The capacity to gain an accurate and good intuitive understanding of affairs.

baSiir (al--) البصير

The All-Seeing

A Divine Attribute of Allah. The One Whose Sight encompasses everything.

ba'th (al--) البعث

the Resurrection

Resurrecting the dead.

batuul (al--) البتول

the pious and chaste one

This term is often used to refer to Maryam / Mary (mother of the Prophet Jesus).

bay' as-salam بيع السّلم

postponed delivery sale

A sale agreement in which the seller promises to deliver the goods at a later date.

bay'ah بيعة

oath of allegiance, pledge

Giving an oath of allegiance to someone. The verb is baaya'a (yubaayi').

bay'at ar-riDwaan بيعة الرّضوان

Pledge of (Divine) Pleasure

This refers to the pledge Muslims gave to the Prophet Muhammad (PBUH) at Hudaybiyah, near Makkah to fight the disbeliving Makkahns if asked to. We find reference to this in the Qur'an (48: 10 and 18).

bay'at al-'aqabah al-'uulaa بيعة العقبة الأولى

First 'Aqabah Pledge

The pledge made by twelve people from Yathrib (Medina)

to the Prophet Muhammad (PBUH) at a place near Makkah to accept the teachings of Islam.The Prophet (PBUH) sent with them the first Muslim missionary, Mus'ab ibn 'umayr.

bay'at al-'aqabah ath-thaaniyah بيعة العقبة الثانية

Second 'Aqabah Pledge

The pledge made by seventy-three Yathribite people, including two women, to the Prophet Muhammad (PBUH), at a place near Makkah, to defend him as they would their own selves and families if he migrated to their town, Yathrib (Medina).

baynuunah kubraa بينونة كبرى

major / absolute finality

The divorce after which a woman may not go back to her former husband, unless she marries another man, consummates her marriage, then gets separated by

divorce or death of the second husband. A new marriage contract is required.

baynuunah Sughraa

بينونة صغرى

minor / relative finality

The case in which a divroced woman may not return to her former husband except with a new marriage contract.

bayt (al--) al-'atiiq البيت العتيق

the old House

The word "al-bayt" is often used to mean the House; i.e., the House of Allah (al-Ka'bah) in Makkah. Sometimes, it is modified by the word 'atiiq which means 'the ancient or al-Haraam 'the sacred'.

bayt (al--) al-Haraam

البيت الحرام

the Sacred House

The Sacred Ka'bah. The mosque around it is known as "al-masjid al-Haraam" (the Sacred Mosque).

bayt (al--) al-ma‘muur

البيت المعمور

Oft-frequented House

According to Islamic traditions, this is a house in the seventh Heaven around which thousands of angels circumambulate. It is parallel to the Ka‘bah on Earth.

bayt (pl. buyuut) allaah

بيت (بيوت) الله

house of Allah

Any mosque or house of worship.

bayt al-maal بيت المال

public treasury

This is short for “bayt maal al-muslimiin”, which means the Muslim public treasury from which the Muslim government spends.

bayt al-maqdis بيت المقدس

Jerusalem

Before instructions were given to the Prophet (PBUH) to face the Ka‘bah in his prayers, he used to face Jerusalem; hence, it is called the first of the two “qiblaas”. The mosque in Jerusalem, known as “al-masjid al-aqSaa” (the furthest mosque) is one of the three mosques in the world that are worthy to make a special journey to. Today, people use the word ‘al-Quds’ for the city.

bayt an-nubuwwah بيت النّبوّة

household of the Prophet

bayt aT-Taa‘ah بيت الطّاعة

husband’s residence

In modern legal terms, the residence where the court decides a wife should stay with her husband.

bayyinah (bayyinaat)

بيّنة (بينات)

clear evidence

bi‘that an-nabiyy بعثة النّبيّ

the Prophet’s messengership

The time at which the Prophet

Muhammad (PBUH) received the first revelation of the Qur'an, brought to him by Archangel Gabriel while Muhammad was in retreat at the Cave of Hiraa' in Makkah. He was forty years old (around the year 609 AD).

bi-'idhnil-laah بإذن الله

with Allah's permission

This expression is used when we promise or express the intention to do something in the future. It is similar to "inshaa' Allah" (Allah willing).

bismillaah بسم الله

In the Name of Allah

It is "sunnah" to begin any activity by saying this expression.

bismi-llaahi-rraHmaani-rraHim بسم الله الرحمن الرحيم

In the Name of Allah, the Beneficent, the Merciful

This is the full form of "basmalah", which is found at the beginning of all Qur'anic "suuraas" except Chapter 9.

buhtaan بهتان

falsehood, slander

buluugh بلوغ

puberty

Reaching the age of physical maturation. For males, the growth of pubic hair and ejaculation (of semen). For girls, this means starting menstruating. (The word originally means 'reaching').

buTlaan بطلان

invalidation, invalidity

An example is the invalidation of the prayer if one talks or laughs while praying.

D

daabbatu-l-arD دابة الأرض

The Reptile of Earth

The name of a monster that will appear in the final days of this world. Its rise is one of the clear signs of the approach of Doomsday.

daa'iyah (pl. du'aah) داعية (دعاة)

preacher of Islam

Someone who preaches or calls to Islam, especially among non-Muslims. But it could also mean a person who preaches religion to Muslims as well.

Daallu(n) (pl. Daalluun) ضال (ضالون)

astray, in error

Someone is termed "Daall" if he lost his way or went astray. In Chapter 1 of the Qur'an, "al-Daalliin" has been interpreted to refer to Christians.

Daamin [1] ضامن ١

guarantor, liable person

A person who guarantees a borrower, for example, or someone who is liable for indemnities.

Daamin [2] ضامن ٢

guarantor

The person who takes the responsibility of making sure that the guaranteed person will do what is required of him.

daaniq (dawaaniq) دانق (دوانق)

Daniq

A small fraction of a "dirham" (1/6 dirham). Metaphorically, it is used to mean an insignificant amount of money (like penny in 'pennyless').

daar (ad--) al-'aakhirah الدار الآخرة

abode of the Hereafter

The term could also refer to the life Hereafter.

daar al-'ahd دار العهد

Abode of Treaty

Non-Muslim territories that have a peace treaty with the Islamic State.

daar al-baqaa' / al-khuluud دار البقاء / الخلود

Abode of Eternity

The reference here is to the Hereafter, as opposed to this world where life is temporary.

daar al-fanaa' دار الفناء

vanishing world

This world where life is temporary, as opposed to life in the Hereafter which is eternal.

daar al-ghuruur دار الغرور

Abode of Delusion

This world where things are ephemeral and may not be real. Man is constantly being exposed to delusions and temptations.

daar al-Harb دار الحرب

Abode of War

Hostile territories, under un-Islamic rule.

daar al-hijrah دار الهجرة

place of migration

The town of al-Madinah al-Munawwarah (Medina) to which the Prophet (PBUH) migrated from Makkah after thirteen years of preaching and frustration.

daar al-islaam دار الإسلام

Abode of Islam

Territories under Islamic rule and sovereignty.

daar al-ibtilaa' دار الابتلاء

abode of tests and turbulations

The reference is to life in this world, where one is being constantly tested with favours and afflictions by Allah. A true believer will show gratitude for the favours and patience and acceptance in the face of afflictions.

daar al-khilaafah دار الخلافة

the seat of caliphate
The seat of the ruling caliph, capital of the state.

daar al-khuld دار الخلد

abode of eternal life
The life Hereafter is so called, because life there has no end.

daar al-kufr دار الكفر

Abode of Unbelievers
Territories that are under the control of Non-Muslims.

daar an-na'iim al-muqiim دار النعيم المقيم

abode of eternal pleasure
The reference is to Paradise where a believer enjoys unlimited types of pleasure endlessly.

daar as-salaam دار السّلام

abode of peace
The reference is to Paradise. But the term has been used by Muslims to name some places, taking the expression in its literal sense.

Daarr (aD--) الضّارّ

The Harm Inflictor
A Divine Attribute of Allah. The One Who inflicts harm if He so wishes, and nothing may befall people against His Will.

daawuud داود

David
The Prophet David who fought Goliath and killed him. He was also a king of the Israelites.(For examples of his story, see the Qur'an, 38: 17-26: 251).

da'aa [1](yad'uu) دعا ١ (يدعو)

to pray, supplicate
Often, the verb in this sense is followed by the word Allah.

da'aa [2](yad'uu) دعا ٢ (يدعو)

to call, invite
As a religious term, to invite people to Islam or to Allah.

dafn دفن

burial
Burying a deceased person.

dahriyy دهري

Atheist

A follower of material atheism who denies the existence of Allah.

dahriyyah (ad--) الدهرية

atheism

The philosophy that denies the existence of Allah, believing only in material beings.

dajjaal (ad--) الدجال

the false messiah

He is called "al-masiiH ad-dajjaal". According to Prophetic traditons, the false messiah will appear near the end of time. He will perform some unsual feats that help him gather many followers and lead many astray.

Dalaalah ضلالة

aberration, going astray

See "Dalaal".

Dalaal ضلال

aberration, going astray

Not following the right path set by the religion.

daliil [1] (pl.adillah) دليل[1] (أدلة)

proof, evidence

Something that proves the truth of a claim.

daliil [2](pl.adillaa') دليل[2] أدلاء

guide

A person who guides people in doing something.

Dalla (yaDill) ضل (يضل)

to go astray

To follow a path other than the one set for people by Allah.

Damaan ضمان

security, guarantee

damm fidyah دم فدية

expiation blood

An animal offering made in expiation for a sin or a religious error, such as missing some pilgrimage rite, or doing something a pilgrim should not do.

dam an-nifaas دم النفاس

lochia

Blood discharge after child birth, which is considered as impure as menstruation. A Muslim woman should not pray, fast or touch the Qur'an until the bleeding completely stops, and she bathes.

Dara'a (yaDra') ila-llaah

ضرع (يضرع) إلى الله

fervently pray to Allah

Pray with utmost humility and submission to Allah.

Darar (pl. aDraar)

ضَرَر (أضرار)

harm, damage

As a religion of peace, Islam makes it mandatory upon its followers not to cause harm to others.

DariiH (pl. aDriHah)

ضريح (أضرحة)

tomb

Usually, the term refers to tombs of special people, like famous pious men ("'awliyaa' SaliHiin" {saints}, as opposed to "qabr" {general tomb}).

Darrah (pl. Daraa'ir)

ضرّة (ضرائر)

co-wife

Other wife of a man with more than one wife.

Daruuraat (aD--) tubiiH al-maHZuuraat

الضّرورات تُبيح المحظورات

necessity knows no laws

Necessity makes illegal things legal. For example, if one is literally dying of hunger he may eat forbidden food to protect his life.

Daruurah (pl. Daruurat)

ضَرُورة (ضرورات)

necessity

Normally, absolute necessity (such as a matter of life or death), which in Islam may make forbidden things, such as eating carcasses, permissible.

Daruuraat (aD--) al-khams الضّرورات الخمس

the five essentials

The five basic necessary things for a human being: life, religion, mind, honour, possessions. We can say that these represent the minimum human rights. One of the main purposes of Islamic law is to protect these rights.

da'wah دعوة

call, invitation

Calling people to Allah or to Islam, or any religion.

da'wah (pl. da'awaat / ad'iyah) دعوة (دعوات / أدعية)

supplication, prayer

Verbal prayers addressed to Allah.

da'wah (pl. da'waat) دعوة (دعوات)

invitation

An inviation to a meal or a ceremony.

Da'wah 'ilaa Allah دعوة إلى الله

call to Allah, propagation of Islam

Calling people to the way chosen for them by their Creator; i.e. propagation of Islam and its teachings.

dayn (pl. duyuun) دين (ديون)

debt

Money borrowed from someone or owed to him for some reason or another.

dayyaan (ad--) الدّيّــان

the Judge

The One Who judges people's actions and rewards or punishes them.

Dhaakir ذاكِر

rememberer of Allah

A person who remembers Allah by glorifying Him and reciting "dhikr" and the Qur'an etc. The feminine is "dhaakirah".

dhaat (adh--) الذّات

entity, person

We often find this term along with or contrasted with "Sifaat" (attributes) with reference to Allah. It means the Divine Entity.

dhaat al-bayn ذات البين

between people

Often, we find this term in expressions like "iSlaaH dhaat al-bayn" (making peace between two people in conflict).

dhaat al-laah ذات الله

Allah's Entity

The term refers to Allah's Entity, as opposed to His Attributes ("Sifaat").

dhabH ذبح

slaugheter

dhabiiH (adh--) الذبيح

sacrifice

The word actually means 'the slaughtered one'. It is used to refer to Ishmael son of Prophet Abraham. The allusion is to their story in which Abraham was about to sacrifice his son Ishmael in obedience to Allah's command. (See the Qur'an 37:100-109.)

dhabiiHah (dhabaa'iH)

ذبيحة (ذبائح)

slaughtered animal

dhanb (pl. dhunuuh)

ذنب (ذنوب)

sin

Anything that violates the teachings of the religion.

dharii'ah (pl. dharaa'i')

ذريعة (ذرائع)

pretext

Originally, it means medium or means to something. Technically, it referes to an execuse for doing something. (See "sadd adh-dharaa'i'").

dhawuu al-qurbaa ذوو القربى

relatives, kinsfolk

People related to a person.

dhawuu al-arHaam (dhuu ar-raHim) ذوو الأرحام (ذو الرّحم)

relatives, kinsfolk

dhikr (pl. adhkaar) ذكر (أذكار)

remembrance (of Allah)

Any form of verbal prayers in which Allah's name is mentioned, including recitation of the Qur'an, is considered "dhikr" or " dhikru – llaah " (mentioning / remembering Allah).

dhimmiyy (pl. ahl adh-dhimmah) ذمّي (أهل الذّمّة)

protected citizen

A Chrisitian or Jewish citizen of an Islamic State.

dhiraa' (pl. 'adhru / 'adhri'ah) ذِراع (أذرع / أذرعَة)

cubit

The length of the forearm.

Dhuu al-fiqaar ذو الفقار

Zul-fiqaar

The name of the sword of the Prophet Muhammad (PBUH). Some say it is the name of the sword of Ali ibn Abi Taleb (RAA).

dhuu al-Hijjah ذو الحجة

Zul-Hijjah

The twelfth month of the Islamic calendar, known as the month of pilgrimage.

dhuu al-jalaal wa al-ikram ذو الجلال و الإكرام

The Majestic and Generous

A Divine Attribute of Allah. The Lord of Majesty and Generosity. Some people have translated this attribute as 'the Mighty and Glorious'.

dhuu al-kifl ذو الكفل

Zul-Kifl

A prophet of the Arabs whose story, we are told, is like that of Ezekiel. A brief mention of his name is given in the Qur'an (38: 48).

dhuu an-nuun ذو النون

Jonah, Jonas

Literally, this means 'of the

whale'. It is a nickname given to the Prophet "yuunus" (Jonas) because of his story with the whale that swallowed him, then threw him ashore.(See his story in the Qur'an, 37: 139-148; 21: 78-88).

dhuu an-nuurayn ذو النورين

man of two lights

This is used to refer to the third righteous caliph "'uthmaan ibn 'affaan" since he married two daughters of the Prophet Muhammad (PBUH), successively.

dhuu al-qarnayn ذو القرنين

Zul-Qarnayn

The name of a man of Allah about whom we read a short story in the Qur'an (Chapter 18: 83-98). Some scholars have identified him with Alexander the Great.

dhuu al-qi'dah ذو القعدة

Zul-Qi'dah

The eleventh month of the Islamic calendar.

dhuu raHim (pl. dhawuu raHim) ذو رحم (ذوو رحم)

relative

A kinsmsan or blood relation.3

diinaar (pl. danaaniir) دينار (دنانير)

Dinar

A golden coin used by Muslims throughout history. At the present time, it is a currency name used in some Arab countries (Bahrain, Iraq, Jordan, Kuwait, Tunisia).

diin (pl. adyaan) دين (أديان)

religion

Religious way of life or teachings.

diiwaan (pl. dawaawiin) ديوان (دواوين)

record, department

Literally, it means official record. The term was used in Islamic history to mean,

among others, something like a government 'Department' or 'Ministry' . For example "diiwaan al-jund' was the government department responsible for "jund' (soldiers, their records and salaries).

Diraar ضرار

reciprocal harming

Causing harm to each other. In the teachings of the Prophet Muhammad (PBUH): "laa Darara wa-laa Diraar." ('One should not cause harm to others nor mutual harm').

dirham (daraahim)

درهم (دراهم)

dirham

A silver coin used by Muslims for many centuries. The word comes from Greek drachma. In terms of weight it is said to be 1/12 of a an "uuqiyyah" (ounce). Nowadays, there are some Arab countries that use the word for their currencies (UAE and Morocco).

Diyah (pl. diyaat) دية (ديات)

blood money

Money paid by the killer to the family of a person killed, intentionally or by mistake.

du'aa' (pl. ad'iyah) دعاء (أدعية)

supplication, verbal prayer,
Praying to Allah.

du'aa' al-istiftaaH

دعاء الاستفتاح

opening prayer

The prayer said after making the first "takbiirah" in formal prayers. It is followed by "suurat al-faatiHah" (the Opening Chapter of the Qur'an).

du'aa' al-qunuut دعاء القنوت

supplication of submissivenss

Usually, this refers to the supplications one says in "Salaat al-witr", the last prayer one performs at night.

dubur aS-Salaah دُبر الصّلاة

after the prayer

Some say it means at the end of the prayer, before finishing

it. Supplications are recommended at this time, since this is one of those occasions when supplications are more apt to be answered by Allah.

dunyaa 1 دنيا ١

this world

Life in this world, as opposed to the Hereafter.

dunyaa 2 دنيا ٢

worldly affairs

Affairs related to worldly matters, as opposed to "diin" (religion and religious affairs).

Dunyawiyy 1 دنيوي ١

secular

Related to worldly affairs.

Dunyawiyy 2 دنيوي ٢

worldly, secular

Something that belongs to life in the present world, as opposed to "'ukhrawiyy". It is also used to contrast with "diiniyy" (religious).

F

fa'l Hasan فأل حسن

good omen

As a religion of optimism, Islam encourages its followers to believe in good omens, but not be detracted by bad ones.

faaHisha الفاحشة

fornication, adultery

Often the word comes with the verb "irtakaba" (to commit) to mean commit illicit sexual act.

faaHishah (pl. fawaHish) فاحشة (فواحش)

shameful or vile deed

faajir (pl. fujjaar) فاجر (فجّار)

libertine, immoral

A licentious person who does not respect any rule of morality or decency.

faaruuq (al--) الفاروق

the prudent

A nickname given to 'Umar ibn al-Khattab (RAA) the second righteous caliph. The word actually means someone who discriminates good from evil or right from wrong.

faasid فاسد

invalid

Not acceptable, due to unfulfillment of some prerequisites.

Faasiq فاسق

sinner, untrustworthy

A corrupt person whose testimony may not be accepted in an Islamic court of law.

faata (yafuut) فات (يفوت)

to be missed

In Arabic to say that one missed something, we would say X was missed by him. So "faatatnii Salaat al-'aSr" means "I missed the afternoon prayer.'

faatiHah (al--) الفاتحة

the Opening Chapter

See "fatiahat al-kitaab".

faatiHat al-kitaab فاتحة الكتاب

the Opening Chapter

Literally, the Opener of the Book, meaning the first chapter of the Qur'an. Often called "al-faatiHah". It is the most frequently recited chapter of the Qur'an, since one has to recite it at least 17 times a day, in the five daily prayers.

faaTimiyyuun (al--) الفاطميّون

the Fatimites

An Islamic dynasty that claims to be descendants of Fatimah (daughter of the Prophet (PBUH).

faDiilah (pl. faDaa'il)

فضيلة (فضائل)

virtue

A good quality.

faDl [1] فضل [1]

distinction, preference

In the well known Farewell Speech of the Prophet (PBUH), he said: "laa faDl li'arabiyyin 'alaa 'ajamiyyin 'illaa bittaqwaa." (There is no distinction or preference for an Arab over a non-Arab except through piety and Allah-fearing).

faDl [2](pl. 'afDaal)

فضل [2] (أفضال)

favour, blessing

A common expression in which we hear this word is "haadhaa min faDli Rabbii" (This is a favour bestowed upon me by my Lord). It is often said to express gratitude to Allah for a certain blessing from Him.

faDl [3](pl. fuDuul)

فضل [3] (فضول)

surplus, excess

Beyond one's needs.

faHshaa' فحشاء

abomination, shameful deeds

fajr (al--) الفجر

dawn

The time of the appearance of the first true light in the East, usually about an hour and a half before sunrise in normal zones.

fajr (al--) al-kaadhib الفجر الكاذب

false dawn

The appearance of some light
in the east before dawn. It does not spread like the real dawn.

fajr (al--) aS-Saadiq الفجر الصّادق

real dawn

The true break of daylight.

fakku raqabah فكّ رقبة

manumission, freeing a slave

Setting a slave free is considered one of the very highly recommended acts of devotion. Sometimes, it is a "kaffaarah" (expiation) for some sins.

falaaH فلاح

success, prosperity

The most frequent use of this word is in the 'adhaan (call to prayer) in the expression: "Hayya 'ala al-falaaH," meaning 'Hurry to success' (in this world and the Hereafter). Prosperity here refers especially to the spiritual aspect.

faqiih (fuqahaa') فقيه (فقهاء)

jurist

A scholar that specializes in the study of Islamic law.

faqqaha (yufaqqih) فقه (يفقه)

to teach

To teach someone or give him the ability to understand especially religious matters. Naturally, the doer in the second instance is Allah.

far' al-insaan فرع الإنسان

descendant

A son or daughter or a descendant of them. This is opposite to "aSl" (predecessor).

faraa'iD (sg. fariiDah) فرائض (فريضة)

inheritance shares

See "farD (pl. faraa'iD)".

faraj فرج

relief

A common expression in which we find this word is "'inna faraja-llaahi qariib" (Surely, relief from Allah is coming soon).

farD [1] فرض [1]

mandatory, obligatory

Required by the religion.

farD [2] (pl. furuuD) فرض [2]

obligatory act / deed

Something a Muslim should do or observe, such as the five daily prayers and the fast of Ramadan.

farD [3] (pl. faraa'iD) فرض [3] (فرائض)

Inheritance share

Obligatory share of inheritance. The distribution of the inheritance has been specified in the Qur'an, and should not be subject to a will. There is a science in Islam for this called "'ilm al-faraa'iD" (science of inheritance shares).

farD 'ayn فرض عين

individual obligation

An act that has to be done by every Muslim, such as praying five times a day.

farD lifaayah فرض كفاية

community obligation

Something that the whole community is responsible for. If some members do it, that would suffice. If none does it then the whole community is at fault and has sinned. An example is funeral prayer; someone has to do it.

fariiDah [1] فريضة [1]

mandatory, obligatory

Required by the religion.

fariiDah [2] (pl. faraa'iD) فريضة [2] (فرائض)

obligatory act

See "farD (pl. furuuD)".

farj (pl. furuuj) فرج (فروج)

genitalia

Sex organ of a man or a woman, though it is normally used for females in common usage.

farraja allaahu kurbata فرّج الله كربة...

May Allah relieve X of his / her difficulties

This prayer is often said when we hear of someone being in a difficult state. (See "faraj").

farsakh (pl. farasikh) فرسخ (فراسخ)

farsakh

A linear measurement which is roughly equivalent to 5544 meters.

fasaad فساد

corruption

Doing bad things.

fasaad al-'amal فساد العمل

invalidity of a deed

See "fasada (yafsud)".

fasada (yufsud) فسد (يفسد)

to be corrupt or invalid

To become bad for a person or invalid for things or actions.

fasakha (yafsakh) فسخ (يفسخ)

to cancel, annul

faskh فسخ

cancellation, annulment

Cancelling a contract (including that of marriage) or considering it void.

faskh al-'aqd فسخ العقد

cancelling an agreement

Cancelling an agreement or considering a contract null and void.

fatana [1] (yaftin) فتن [1] (يفتن)

to tempt

To tempt one to do something wrong.

fatana [2] (yaftin) فتن [2] (يفتن)

to test or try with affliction

This sense is found only in the context of Allah testing

believers with afflictions. (See the Qur'an, 29: 2).

fatana [3] (yaftin) فتن [3] (يفتن)

persecute

To persecute someone (by burning, e.g.) because of his religious beliefs. (See the Qur'an, 85:10).

fatH khaybar فتح خيبر

Conquest of Khaybar

Victorious entry of the citadel of Khaybar, north of Medina, by the Prophet Muhammad (PBUH) and his companions.

fatH makkah فتح مكّة

Capture of Makkah

Victorious entry of Makkah by the Prophet Muhammad (PBUH) and his companions in the eighth year of Hijrah.

fattaaH (al--) الفتّاح

The Supreme Opener

A Divine Attribute of Allah. The One Who opens the doors of His treasures, mercy and victory for His servants. The word could also mean 'the Supreme Judge'.

faTuur فطور

breakfast

In Ramadan, the meal one takes after sunset.

fatwaa فتوى

legal opinion

The opinion given by a religious scholar on an issue.

fawaat ar-rak'ah فوات الرّكعة

missing a rak'ah

In congregational worship, a person has missed a "rak'ah", and has to do it after the imam finishes the "Salaah" if he joined the group after the imam has raised his head from the bowing position. (See "rak'ah").

fawwaDa (yufawwiD) 'amrahu فوّض (يفوّض) أمره

to confide one's cause to

Very often we hear the

expression: "fawwaDa 'amrahu ilal-laah" to mean that someone has entrusted his cause to Allah or left the matter in Allah's hands.

fay' فَيء

gains from enemy

Things won from the enemy of Muslims without a fight, as opposed to "ghaniimah" and "'anfaal".

fidyah 1 فدية 1

ransom

Money paid to liberate a war captive.

fidyah 2 فدية 2

expiation, atonemtent

See "kaffaarah".

fii sabiili –llaah في سبيل الله

for the cause of Allah

Literally, this means in the way of Allah. Usually the expression means anything done for the sake of Allah, more specifically "al-jihaad".

fil-manshaTi wal-makrah في المنشط و المكره

under all conditions

We find this expression in examples such as remembering Allah or duties towards Him under all conditions. This means that one does not forget Allah whether he is happy or unhappy.

fiqh فقـه

Islamic jurisprudence

Fiqh or "'ilm al-fiqh" covers all areas related to worship and transactions. The word originally means 'understanding'.

firaash (pl. furush) فراش (فرش)

conjugal bed

The word is used sometimes to refer to the owner of conjugal bed, the husband. For example, in the hadeeth the illecit child legally belongs to the husband of the mother ("al-walad li-lfiraash…").

fir'awn فرعون

Pharoah

In the Qur'an, reference is made to the Pharoah who had encounters with the Prophet Moses. He is considered a typical example of tyranny and disbelief.

firdaws فردوس

Paradise

firinj (al--) / al-firinjah الفرنج / الفرنجة

Europeans

In Islamic history, this term was used to refer to Europeans.

firqah (pl. firaq) فِرقة (فِرَق)

sect

A group of people who share a sub-set of beliefs and practices of a certain religion.

fis-saraa'i waD-Darra' في السّراء و الضّراء

under all conditions

We find this expression in examples such as remembering Allah or duties towards Him under all conditions. This means that one does not forget Allah whether he is happy or unhappy.

fisq فسق

sinfulness, moral depravity

Doing forbidden things.

fiTaam فِطَام

weaning

Stopping breast-feeding of a baby, normally at the age of two.

fitan (sg. Fitnah) فتن (فتنة)

trial, temptation,...

See "fitnah" 1-4.

fitnah [1] فتنة [1]

religious persecution

The term is found in the Qur'an in this sense, among other senses. (See, e.g., 2: 192 and 193).

fitnah [2] فتنة [2]

allurement, temptation

Temptation or a source of

temptation that may distract a believer from his duties or might lead one to sin. (See the Qur'an, 8: 28).

fitnah [3] (pl. fitan) فتنة [3] (فتن)

affliction, test

A good or bad thing that happens to a person, which is normally considered a test of a Muslim's faith. (See the Qur'an, 21: 35).

fitnah [4] (pl. fitan) فتنة [4] (فتن)

dissention, sedition

(See the Qur'an, 9: 47 and 48).

fiTrah فطرة

natural disposition, nature

fujuur فجور

immorality, depravation

This term could also mean transgression.

furqaan (al--) الفرقان

the Criterion

One of the attributes or names of the Qur'an, being the Criterion by which people's actions and things are to be judged.

fruruu' (far') [1] فروع (فرع) [1]

branches

The word is used in both its physical and metaphorical senses. As a term, it is often contrasted with "'uSuul" (principles, foundations), which means issues that are based on those principles.

furuu' (sg. Far') [2]

فروع (فرع)[2]

descendants

Sons, daughters and sons' descendants.

fusuuq فسوق

wickedness, lewdness

futuuH (aat) (sg. fatH)

فتوح (فتح)

victorious battles

This term is used in Islamic history to refer to the various battles in which Muslims conquered non-Muslim lands.

G

ghaafil (pl. ghaafiluun) غافل (غافلون)

unaware, heedless

Generally, someone who is unaware of things around him / her. But it is also used to refer to someone who neglects his duties towards his Creator and/or does not remember Allah. (See "ghaflah").

ghaalaa (yughaalii) غالي (يغالي)

to exaggerate

To be excessive in something, be it a belief or an act.

ghaar Hiraa' غار حراء

Cave of Hiraa'

The cave in "jabal an-nuur" (Mount of Light) where the Prophet Muhammad (PBUH) used to retreat, before Islam, for contemplation.

ghaar thawr غار ثور

Cave of Thawr

The cave in which the Prophet (PBUH) hid during his migration from Makkah to Medina with his friend Abu Bakr. (See the Qur'an, 9: 40).

ghaarim (pl. ghaarimuun) غارم (غارمون)

person in debt

Person in debt, whether because of borrowing or because he has to pay blood money, for example. Such a person deserves to receive alms and charity.

ghaaz(in) (pl, ghuzaah) غاز (غزاة)

fighter for the Cause of Allah

A participant in a holy war against the enemies of Islam in a land of the unbelievers.

Ghabn غبن

fraud

Fraud or deception in a transaction, such as selling something deficient, without the buyer's consent. The buyer is called "maghbuun".

ghaDD al-baSar غض البصر

lowering the gaze

Not gazing at somebody. Believers are required to

lower their gaze especially in the presence of the opposite sex, out of modesty.(See the Qur'an, 24: 30-31).

ghadt غدر

betrayal, treachery

An example, is killing someone from behind or without warning.

ghaffaar (al--) الغفار

The Most Forgiving

A Divine Attribute of Allah. The One Whose forgiveness has no limits.

ghaflah غفلة

inattention, oblivion

Inadvertent negligence, or a state of forgetting about Allah and that He is watching us.

ghafuur (al--) الغفور

The Ever-Forgiving

A Divine Attribute of Allah. The One Who keeps forgiving the repenting sinners, and Whose forgiveness knows no limits.

ghaniimah (pl. ghanaa'im)

غنيمة (غنائم)

spoils of war

What is won from the enemy in a legitimate war.

ghaniyy (al--) الغني

The Self-Sufficient

A Divine Attribute of Allah. The One Who has no need for anyone or anything.

ghargharat al-mawt

غرغرة الموت

gargle of death

The time when the soul departs the body. At this time repentance from disbelief is not accepted from an unbeliever.

ghaSb غصب

illegal seizure

To take something, often a piece of property, by force.

ghayb (pl. ghuyuub)

غيب (غيوب)

unseen thing

Something that we cannot see, be it in the past, present or future, but especially the future.

ghaybat al-'imaam غيبة الإمام

occultation of the imam

The Shi'ite belief of the

temporary disappearance of the twelfth imam, to appear in the later days.

ghayZ غيـــظ

rage

Uncontrolled temper or extreme annoyance of something / someone.

ghazwah غـــزوة

battle, campaign

The term normally refers to a campaign or battle which was under the leadership of the Prophet Muhammad (PBUH). This is contrasted with "sariyyah" (expedition).

ghazwat al-aHzaab

غزوة الأحزاب

Battle of the Clans

A reference is given in the Qur'an to this Battle in the Chapter that has the name "al-aHzaab" (33: 9-25). See "ghazwat al-khandaq", another name for this Battle.

ghazwat badr غزوة بدر

the Battle of Badr

The first battle in Islamic history between the Prophet (PBUH) and the Muslims (about 300) against the polytheists of Makkah (more than 1000), and the Muslims came out victorious, with many leaders of Quraish killed or captivated. The Battle started on the 17th of Ramadan, second year of Hijrah.

ghazwat banii an-naDiir

غزوة بني النّضيــر

Campaign against Banii an-NaDiir

The campaign against the Jewish tribe at Medina who conspired with the pagans against the Prophet (PBUH) and the Muslims, violating a treaty to the opposite effect. They were expelled from Medina.

ghazwat banni qaynuqaa'

غزوة بني قينقاع

Campaign against Banii Qaynuqaa'

Banuu Qaynuqaa' was the last Jewish tribe to be expelled from Medina because of their constant

harrassment of the Muslims and their violation of the peaceful coexistence agreement with the Prophet of Islam. They settled in a place on the Northern borders of Arabia.

ghazwat banii qurayZah

غزوة بني قريظة

Campaign against Banii Qurayzah

The campaign against the Jewish tribe that had agreed to defend Medina with the Muslims against outsiders, but when the city was besieged and the Muslims were busy fighting, this tribe decided to side with the enemy against their former allies. Upon the withdrawal of the "aHzaab" (clans) they were punished in the way that was decided by the judge they chose themselves. The campaign took place in the 5th year after Hijrah.

ghazwat Hunayn غزوة حُنَين

Battle of Hunayn

The Battle that took place at Hunayn (near Makkah) between the Muslims led by the Prophet (PBUH) and the polytheists in the eighth year of Hijrah. For the first time, the Muslim army was larger than that of their enemy, but they were ambushed and routed in the beginning. But they were victorious in the end. (See the Qur'an, 9: 25-26).

ghazwat al-khandaq

غزوة الخندق

Battle of the Trench

The Battle that took place in the fifth year of Hijrah. It is called so because for the first time in Arabian history a trench was dug by the Muslims, at the suggestion of Salman al-Farisi, to protect Medina from the attacking polytheists. It is also called the Battle of the Clans, because the Quraish of Makkah managed to bring many clans with them to fight the Muslims.

ghazwat khaybar غزوة خيبر

Camapaign of Khaybar

The campaign that took place

against Khaybar, the stronghold of Jewish tribes in North Arabia, which had become 'a hornet's nest' of the enemies of Islam. The forts of Khaybar were reduced one by one in the seventh year of the Hijrah.

ghazwat mu'tah غزوة مؤتة

the Expedition of Mu'tah

The Expedition sent by the Prophet (PBUH) to the North West of Arabia in the eighth year of Hijrah, to fight Byzantines who had killed the Muslim emissary to their governor. This is probably the only campaign given the name of "ghazwah" which was not carried out under the direct command of the Prophet Muhammad (PBUH).

ghazwat tabuuk غزوة تبوك

The Tabouk Campaign

The Campaign that was made during the summer of the ninth year of Hijrah to the southern borders of the Syrian Region under the leadership of the Prophet (PBUH). It ended peacefully, because the enemy forces did not show up.

ghiibah غيبة

backbiting

Saying something bad about a Muslim in his absence, even if it is true. This is forbidden by the Qur'an. (See 49: 12). It is a greater sin if what is said is false, because then it becomes an act of aggression.

ghinaa an-nafs غنى النفس

contentment

Literally, richness of the self, meaning self independence or sufficiency.

ghufraan غفران

forgivness

Similar in meaning to "maghfirah".

ghulaah غلاة

extremists

People who believe in or call to extreme views especially in religious matters.

ghuluul غلول

stealing from spoils

Taking anything from the

spoils of war before they are officially distributed by the person in charge. It is considered a great crime. (See the Qur'an, 3:151).

ghuluww غلو

extremism, excessiveness

Extremism and excessiveness even in religious matters is frowned upon by Islam, which is a religion of moderation.

ghunnah غنة

nasalization

The production of a sound with the air escaping through the nose, as we do when we pronounce the /n/ and /m/. Normally, the vowel that precedes these nasal consonants is nasalized. Compare, e.g., the pronunciation of the vowel /a/ in 'at' and 'ant'.

ghusl غسل

washing the body

Washing the whole body, including the head. This is required in the case of a major ritual impurity ("Hadath akbar"), such as after sexual intercourse or menstruation, for one to be able to pray.

H

Haa'iD حائض

menstruating female

A menstruating female is not supposed to pray, fast or touch the Qur'an. She may, however, recite it from memory. Sexual intercourse is also forbidden during menstruation.

haabiil هابيل

Abel

The good son of Adam who was killed by his brother Cain (See the Qur'an, 5: 31).

haadii (al--) الهادي

The Supreme Guide

A Divine Attribute of Allah. The Only and True Provider of guidance.

HaaDinah حاضنة

nursemaid

A woman who breastfeeds somebody else's baby. (See "murDi'ah").

HaafiZ al-qur'aan حافظ القرآن

memorizer of the Qur'an

This term is used in the Muslim World to refer to a person who has memorized the Qur'an and can recite it from memory. Sometimes, we hear the word HaafiZ alone to refer to such a person.

HaafiZ li-farjih حافظ لفرجه

chaste

Literally, it means someone who protects his genital (from sinful acts).

HaafiZ li-Huduudi-llah حافظ لحدود الله

observant of Allah's limits

An Allah fearing person who obeys His commands.

haajar هاجر

Hager

The second wife of the Prophet Abraham (PBUH) and mother of the Prophet Ishamael. She is the one who accompanied the Prophet Abraham to Makkah and was, with her son, the first settlers

there. Her walking between "Safa and Marwah" in frantic search for water for her son is commemorated in the ritual of "sa'y".

Haajj (pl. Hujjaaj) حاج (حجاج)

pilgrim

A pilgrim to Makkah.

Haala (yaHuul) al-Hawl حال (يحول) الحول

one year passed

In the payment of alms, we always see the stipulation of the passage of one full lunar year (354 days).

Haamil حامل

pregnant

Unlike other women, the waiting period ("'iddah") for a divorced pregnant woman is childbirth. Only then may she remarry. Pregnancy may be a legitimate excuse for breaking the fast of Ramadan.

Haamil (pl. Hamalah) al-qur'aan حامل (حملة) القرآن

memorizer of the Qur'an

A person who knows the Qur'an by heart. This expression is less frequently used than "HaafiZ".

Haanith حانث

oath breaker, perjurer

Someone who does not fulfil what he / she has sworn to Allah to do.

haaruun هارون

Aaron

The brother of the Prophet Moses. He was sent by Allah along with Moses to Pharoah at the request of Moses, who said that Aaron was more articulate than him. (See the Qur'an, e.g. 28: 34-35).

haaruut wa maaruut هاروت و ماروت

Haroot and Maroot

Names of two angels in Babylonia who are associated with magic. (See the Qur'an, 2: 102)

haashimiyy هاشمي

Hashemite

A member of the Hashemite tribe of the Prophet Muhammad (PBUH) or a descendant of that tribe.

hadaa (yahdii) هدى (يهدي)

to guide

To show someone the right way.

HaDaanah حضانة

child custody

Taking care of a child: upbringing, feeding, clothing…

HaDar (al--) الحضر

sojourn, residence

Residing in a certain place or staying for a long period, as opposed to a person on travel ("safar"). This is important with regards to rulings related to "Salaah" and "Sawm" (prayer and fasting), such as shortening the formal prayers and breaking the fast.

Hadath akbar حدث أكبر

major ritual impurity

Major ritual impurity means that a Muslim should have a shower or wash the whole body, including the head, before he / she can pray or touch the Qur'an. This type of impurity may be caused by having sex, ejaculation, wet dream, menstruation or post-natal bleeding.

Hadath aSghar حدث أصغر

minor impurity

Minor ritual impurity means that one cannot pray or touch the Qur'an (according to some views) except after having ablution ("wuDuu'"). This type of impurity is caused by things like going to the bathroom, touching the private parts, passing wind and bleeding (from a wound, e.g.).

Hadd 1 (pl. Huduud) حد 1 (حدود)

limit set by Allah

Limit set in the Qur'an which should not be transgressed by a Muslim, or an act prohibited by Allah.

Hadd 2 (pl. Huduud) حد 2 (حدود)

specified punishment

Punishment specified in the Qur'an for a major crime, such as murder, stealing or fornication.

Hadd al-qadhf حد القذف

penalty for slander

The penalty specified for accusing a Muslim, male or female, of fornication, without producing four witnesses. (See the Qur'an, 24: 4).

Haddatha (yuHaddith) حدث (يحدث)

to narrate a hadeeth

To report or narrate a prophetic tradition.

Hadiith حديث

prophetic tradition

A report about the Prophet Muhammad (PBUH) saying or doing something, or reacting to something (approving or disapproving of it). The authenticity of the report (hadeeth) depends on the reliability of the narrator(s).

Hadiith al-ifk حديث الإفك

story of the Slander

The slanderous rumour that was fabricated by some hypocrites about Aishah, the wife of the Prophet (PBUH), claiming that she committed adultery. The Qur'an declared her innocence of this slander, and Allah warns the Muslims of repeating it. (See the Qur'an, 24: 11-20).

Hadiith 'aziiz حديث عزيز

dear hadeeth

This is a Prophetic tradition narrated by two people and heard from two others.

Hadiith Da'iif حديث ضعيف

weak hadeeth

This means that there is doubt about the narrator suffering from bad memory or lack of integrity. So the text's authenticity becomes questionable.

Hadiith ghariib حديث غريب

strange hadeeth

A hadeeth is considered 'strange' if its text is unfamiliar, being reported by a single narrator, for example.

Hadiith Hasan حديث حسن

good hadeeth

The reference is to the degree

of reliability of transmission of the text, not the text itself. "Hasan" is considered second degree of reliability, the first being "SaHiiH" (sound).

Hadiith maqTuu‘ حديث مقطوع

cut hadeeth

A tradition whose chain of narrators stop at the second generation ("taabi‘iyy").

Hadiith marfuu‘ حديث مرفوع

attributed hadeeth

A hadeeth attributed to the Prophet (PBUH), but not proven to have a continuous chain of transmitters up to him.

Hadiith mashhuur

حديث مشهور

famous hadeeth

A Prophetic tradition reported by a few people but not less than two.

Hadiith mawDuu‘

حديث موضوع

fabricated hadeeth

A tradition fabricated by the narrator and falsely ascribing it to the Prophet Muhammad (PBUH). Naturally, this is a grave sin.

Hadiith mawquuf

حديث موقوف

stopped hadeeth

A tradition ascribed to a companion of the Prophet (PBUH).

Hadiith munqaTi‘

حديث منقطع

discontinued hadeeth

A tradition that has a discontinuous chain of transmitters (e.g., a second generation narrator is missing before the name of the Companion of the Prophet (PBUH).)

Hadiith mursal حديث مرسل

mursal hadeeth

A hadeeth attributed to the Prophet (PBUH) by a second generation narrator without mentioning the name of the first generation narrator (the companion of the Prophet (PBUH).

Hadiith mutawaatir

حديث متواتر

frequently reported hadeeth

A hadeeth that has been reported by many narrators and with different chains of transmission.

Hadiith muttaSil

حديث متصل

continuous hadeeth

A "Hadiith" that has a continuous chain of narrators.

Hadiith qudsiyy حديث قدسي

Divine hadeeth

A hadeeth whose text is attributed by the Prophet to Allah. So we read: "The Prophet (PBUH) said: Allah says: "...". Naturally, this should not be confused with the Qur'an, because the words in the hadeeth are of the Prophet, unlike the Qur'an which is the exact words of Allah.

Hadiith SaHiiH حديث صحيح

sound hadeeth

A hadeeth whose transmission satisfies the

conditions set by specialists, such as having a continuous chain of well-known narrators of high moral calibre and strong memories.

Hadr حدر

relatively fast recitation

The mode of reciting the Qur'an in a manner faster than usual, but without neglecting any of the rules of correct enunciation ("tajwiid"). See "tadwiir" and "tartiil".

hady(un) هدي

offering

An animal designated to be offered for
sacrifice by a pilgrim.

HafiiZ (al--) الحفيظ

The Ever-Protecting / Guarding

A Divine Attribute of Allah. The True Protector of His creation.

Hajar (al--) al-aswad

الحجر الأسود

The Black Stone

The blessed stone in the Northern corner of the

Ka'bah nearest to the door, from which the circumambulating ("Tawaaf") of the Ka'bah starts. A circumambulating person should try to kiss it, touch it or at least point to it every time he passes by.

Hajara (yaHjur) حجر (يحجر)

declare legal incompetence

To declare legal incompetence of a person. Naturally, this can only be done by a court of law.

Hajb حجب

blocking inheritance

Preventing someone from inheriting. In Islamic law, the presence of a closer relative to the deceased, for example, may block a further relation from inheriting.

Hajj حج

pilgrimage to Makkah

It is the fifth corner-stone of Islam which should be performed by everyable, adult Muslim once in his / her life time. It has to be performed in a very specific manner, at the time specified in the month of pilgrimage ("Dhul-Hijjah").

Hajj 'aSghar حج أصغر

lesser pilgrimage

This refers to the "'umrah", which may be perfomed around the year.

Hajj al-bayt حج البيت

pilgrimage to Makkah

Literally, the expression means going to the House (of Allah), the Ka'bah for pilgrimage. It is used to mean performing the pilgrimage to Makkah, according to the rules of Hajj.

Hajj al-ifraad حج الإفراد

Hajj performed alone

Performing Hajj only, not preceded by or coupled with "'umrah" (lesser Hajj).

Hajj al-qiraan حج القران

Hajj coupled with 'Umra

Performing both "Hajj" and "'umrah" (lesser pilgrimage) without changing one's pilgrim garb ("iHraam").

Hajj at-tamattu' حج التمتع

Hajj of enjoyment

Performing "'umrah" then changing to regular clothes to enjoy a normal way of living until the eighth day of the month of pilgrimage. Then one wears the "iHraam" again to start the rituals of the hajj.

Hajj mabruur حج مبرور

pure pilgrimage

A pilgrimage in which the pilgrim observes all the rules of proper pilgrimage, including the rituals and conduct.

Hajr حجر

declaring legal incompetence

Declaring legal incompetence of an adult. So he may not, for example, carry out any transactions, such as selling or buying, donating…etc.

hajr az-zawjah هجر الزّوجة

desertion of wife

To desert one's wife, usually by sleeping away from her, or not sleeping with her in the same bed.

Hakam (al--) الحكم

Supreme Judge / Ruler

A Divine Attribute of Allah.The Absolute Ruler, Whose judgement no one can dispute or disregard.

Hakiim (al--) الحكيم

The All-Wise

A Divine Attribute of Allah.The One Whose wisdom has no limits.

Halaal حلال

permissible, lawful

In Islam everything is considered lawful unless it is explicitly or implicitly forbidden by the religion.

Halafa (yaHlif) حلف (يحلف)

to swear, take an oath

A Muslim should never swear except to or by Allah.

Halif حلف

swearing, taking an oath

See "Halafa" ("yaHlif").

Haliim (al--) الحليم

The Ever-Forbearing

A Divine Attribute of Allah.The One Who is always

Tolerant of His servants' mistakes, and is never hasty in punishing them for their sins.

hallala (yuhallil) هلّل (يهلّل)

to say: "laa 'ilaaha 'ill-allaah."

To say the expression which means, "There is no deity except Allah." The verbal noun is "tahliil".

Halq حلق

shaving

Removing the hair from any part of the body with a blade or the like, asopposed to "natf" (plucking) and "taqSiir" (shortening or cutting).

Halq al-'aanah حلق العانة

shaving pubic hair

It is sunnah (recommended practice of the Prophet Muhammad {PBUH}) to remove pubic hair by shaving or other means.

Hamdalah حَمدلة

saying: "al-Hamdu lillaah"

Saying the expression which means "Praise the Lord" or "Thank Allah".

Hamdu (al--) li-llaah الحمد لله

Praise the Lord, Thank Allah

This is the expression often said by a Muslim to express his gratitude to Allah for all His favours of health, provisions etc. Therefore, it is used to mean "I am fine" in answer to "How are your?", and it is used after eating or drinking.

Hamida (yaHmad) حمد (يحمد)

to praise or thank

The verb has both meanings. This is true of its derivatives: Hamd, muHammad, Hamiid, maHmuud, aHmad…etc.

Hamiid (al--) الحميد

The Ever-Praiseworthy

A Divine Attribute of Allah. The One Most Worthy of praise and thanks for His unlimited favours.

Hanafiyy (pl. 'aHnaaf)

حنفي (أحناف)

Hanafi

Follower of Imam Abu

Hanifah al-Nu'man school of Islamic law, which is one of the four major Sunni schools.

Hanatha (yaHnath)

حنث (يحنث)

to foreswear, break an oath

See "Hinth al-yamiin".

Hanbaliyy (Hanaabilah)

حنبلي (حنابلة)

Hanbali

Follower of Iman Ahmad ibn Hanbal, founder of one the four major Sunni schools of Islamic law.

Haniif (pl. Hunafaa')

حنيف (حنفاء)

upright

Many verses are found in the Qur'an that describe the Prophet Abraham (PBUH) as being "Haniif" meaning that he was in the right direction.

Haniifiyyah (al--) الحنيفية

Hanifism, uprightness

In Islamic history the term often refers to the 'religion" of the pre-Islamic believers in monotheism in Arabia.

Haqq (al--) الحق

The Supreme Truth

A Divine Attribute of Allah. The One Whose existence and reality cannot be denied or doubted.

Haqq [1] حق [1]

true, truth

This word could be used as an adjective to mean 'true' (not false), real' or 'inevitable'. It can be used as a noun to mean 'truth'.

Haqq [2] (pl. Huquuq)

حق [2] (حقوق)

right, due

Such as the right a parent has over his children.

Haqq (Huquuq) al-'insaan

حق (حقوق) الإنسان

human's right

This is often used in contrast to "Haqq allaah". It means right of a person. For example, when a person steals he violates the injunctions of his religion and violates the right of the human by taking something

from the stolen person. The former violation can be forgiven by Allah, but the human's right has to be returned as a necessary part of repentance.

Haqq allaah حق الله

Allah's right

This is often used in contrast to "Haqq al-insaan" (human's right). It means the duty to Allah. For example, when a person steals he violates his duty to Allah (of not transgressing against others) and violates the right of the human by taking something from the stolen person.

Haqq al-yaqiin حق اليقين

absolute certainty

Certainty that comes after experiencing something.

Haraam حرام [1]

forbidden, unlawful

Something forbidden in the Qur'an or the teachings of the Prophet Muhammad (PBUH).

Haraam [2] حرام [2]

sacred

This meaning is found in expressions like "al-bayt al-Haraam" (the Sacred House - the Ka'bah) and "ash-shahr al-Haraam" (the sacred month).

Harakah (pl. Harakaat) حركة (حركات)

vowel

In "Tajwiid" the term means either a short vowel or the duration of a short vowel. So a vowel could, for example, have the duration of 4 or 5 Harakaat. Nasalization could have the duration of 2 vowels.

Haram (al--) الحرم

the Sacntuary

This word is often used to refer to either the holy mosque of Makkah or the Prophet's mosque at Medina Technically, the word means a sanctuary; hence it could refer to the whole area surrounding both mosques within whose boundary no hunting is permitted.

Harbiyy حربي

hostile unbeliever

A disbeliever in Islam who is in a state of war with Muslims.

Harf (pl. Huruuf) حرف (حروف)

letter / sound

In Arabic grammar books the word is used for both the written form of the sound and the sound itself, since there is a high degree of fit between sounds and their written representations.

Harrafa (yuHarrif) حرف (يحرف)

to misinterpret, misrepresent

To deliberately give wrong meaning or representation of a sacred text.

Harrama (yuHarrim)

حرّم (يحرم)

make unlawful or sacred

The verb is used in both senses in the Qur'an; its meaning depends on the context.

Hasanah (pl. Hasanaat)

حسنة (حسنات)

merit

The reward recorded for one on doing a good thing or abstaining from something wrong or bad. It is the opposite of "sayyi'ah" (demerit).

Hasan حسن

good

In the science of hadeeth, this term is used to describe the text of the hadeeth that has specific qualities, such as logical acceptability.

Hasbiy-allaahu wa ni'ma al-wakiil حسبي الله و نعم الوكيل

Allah is sufficient for me, and He is the Best Trustee

This expression, mentioned in the Qur'an (3: 173), is said when a Muslim is in difficulty or under a threat, to seek Divine help and support.

Hashr (al--) الحشر

the Gathering, Assembling

The resurrection and gathering of all creatures on the Day of Judgement.

Hasiib (al--) الحسيب

The Supreme Reckoner/ the Most Sufficient One

A Divine Attribute: The One Who keeps good account (the Qur'an 33:39) or Who is Sufficient as a Protector, for instance (the Qur'an 9:129).

HaTiim (al--) الحطيم

Hateem

The half circular wall that encloses Hijr Ismael (the open area that complements the Ka'bah and is considered part of it). One should, therefore, walk outside it during the Tawaaf (circumambulation).

hatk al-irD هتك العرض

disgracing

Causing someone to be dishonoured, such as by raping a woman.

hawaa (al--) الهوى

whims and desires

One's desires and whims. This expression is commonly found in the expression "ittibaa' al-hawaa" (following one's whims).

Hawaariyy (pl. Hawaariyyuun) حواري (حواريون)

disciple

Often, this term is used to refer to the disciples of the Prophet Jesus (PBUH).

HawD (al--) al-mawruud الحوض المورود

the frequented basin

The reference is to the special basin of water / river which the Prophet (PBUH) has been promised by Allah in the Hereafter. Some scholars say that it is the River Kawthar mentioned in Chapter 108 of the Qur'an.

Hawl [1] حول [1]

lunar year

We often find the expression "Haala 'alayhi al-Hawl" meaning one year passed for it. The "zakaat" becomes required for certain things upon the passage of one lunar year.

Hawl [2] حول [2]

power, ability

See "laa Hawla walaa quwwata illaa bi-llaah" for the common expression in which this word occurs.

Hawqalah حوقلة

saying: "laa Hawla ..."

Saying what is translated as "There is no power or ability except with Allah's help". (See "Hawl [2]").

Hawwaa' حواء

Eve

Name of the mother of mankind and wife of Adam.

Hayaa' [1] حياء [1]

modesty, shyness

The opposite of vulgarity and boldness.

Hayaa' [2] حياء [2]

fear of shame

The sense which makes one avoid wrong acts and words; it is similar to the fear of Allah.

Hayaat (al--) ad-dunyaa الحياة الدنيا

this life

Life in this world which is a transient and temporary one. It is the life where one should prepare for the Hereafter by doing good deeds and avoiding bad ones.

HayD حيض

menstruation, menses

Regular monthly bleeding by females.

Hayy (al--) الحي

The Ever-Living

A Divine Attribute of Allah. The One Whose life has no beginning nor an end.

Hayy 'ala-falaaH حيّ على الفلاح

hurry to success

This is part of the "adhaan" (call to prayer), reminding believers that performing the prayer means success.

Hayy 'alaS-Salaah حيّ على الصّلاة

Hurry to the prayer

One of the utterances of the call to prayer, reminding believers that it is time to pray.

Hidaad حِدَاد

mourning

In Islam, mourning should not exceed three days except for the widow whose

mourning period is four lunar months and ten days, during which period she has to observe certain restrictions in appearance and movements.

hidaayah هداية

guidance

Showing the right way.

HifZ al-'ahd حفظ العهد

upholding a pledge

Fulfilling an obligation, a promise or an agreement.

HifZ al-farj حفظ الفرج

being chaste

Literally, this means guarding one's genitals against committing illegal sex.

HifZ al-lisaan حفظ اللّسان

guarding the tongue

Guarding one's tongue against saying anything wrong or bad.

Hijaab حِجَاب

veil, covering the body

According to Islamic teachings, an adult Muslim female should cover her whole body, with the exception of the face and hands (probably) in the presence of "ajnabiyy" (stranger) or "non-maHram" men. (See "ajnabiyy" and "maHram").

Hijaamah حِجامة

cupping, blood letting

A medical practice that was common in Muslim coutries was making small cuts in certain parts of the body and using a cupping glass to let the 'bad blood' out.

Hijjat al-wadaa' حجّة الوداع

farewell pilgrimage

The pilgrimage performed by the Prophet (PBUH) in the tenth year of Hijra, during which he gave a comprehensive sermon known as "the Farewell Speech".

Hijr ismaa'iil حجر إسماعيل

Ishmael's enclosure

The enclosure adjacent to one side of the Ka'bah of which it is considered to be a part. Therefore, the person making "Tawaaf" should go around it (not inside it).

Hijrah هجرة

migration

In Islam, "hijrah" means migrating from a land of persecution and disbelief to a land of belief, normally to find freedom of practising Islam.

hijriyy / hijriyyah هجري / هجرية

of Hijra

Related to the hijrah (migration of the Prophet Muhammad (PBUH) from Makkah to Medina in 622 AD. (See "taqwiim hijrii").

Hikmah (pl. Hikam) حكمة (حكم)

rationale

Reason for a certain injunction, for example. Naturally, when we talk about religious injunctions we may give 'possible' explanations or reasons.

Hikmah حكمة

wisdom / discretion

Hill حِل

lawful, permissible

It is a less common alternative to the word "Halaal".

Hill (al--) الحل

outside the sanctuary

Beyond the boundaries of Makkah or Medina, where certain restrictions are to be observed, such as hunting, which is forbidden in these two cities. This word is contrasted with "al-Haram" (the sanctuary).

Hilm حلم

clemency, forbearance

Lenience and toleration of others' wrong doings against one.

Himaa (al--) الحمى

sanctuary, protected area

Hinth al-yamiin حنث اليمين

foreswearing, breaking an oath

Not doing something one has sworn to Allah to do.

Hiqq (Huquq) حقّ (حقوق)

four year camel

A male camel that has reached its fourth year. A female is called Hiqqah.

Hiraabah حِرَابَة

highway robbery

Highway robbery is considered a major crime for which one may lose a hand and a leg or even receive the penalty of death.

Hisaab [1] حساب [1]

accountability

The Day of Judgement is also called "yawm al-Hisaab" (the Day of Accountability / Reckoning).

Hisaab [2] حساب [2]

calculation

Hisbah (al--) الحسبة

inspection

Checking that people are behaving according to the rules of the religion, including the inspection of weights and measures used by tradesmen and merchants.

Hizb (pl. 'aHzaab) حزب (أحزاب)

sub-part

In its general sense the word means a party or group of people, but it is used as a technical term to mean half of the "juz'" in the Qur'an. So the Qur'an consists of 60 Hizbs.

hubal هُبَل

Hubal

Name of a male idol that was stationed in the Ka'bah before the advent of Islam.

Hubs (pl. 'aHbaas)

حبس (أحباس)

endowment

The buildings endowed for specific purposes or groups of people.

Hudaa هُدَى

guidance

The right path or showing it to someone.

Hujrah (al--) an-nabawiyyah

الحجرة النّبويّة

The Prophet's Chamber

The enclosure where we find the tombs of the Prophet (PBUH) and his friends, Abu Bakr and 'Umar. Originally, this was one of the rooms in which the Prophet (PBUH) used to live.

Hukm (pl. 'aHkaam)

حكم (أحكام)

ruling

See "'aHkaam" (rulings).

Hukm (al--) ash-shar'iyy

الحكم الشّـرعي

legal decision

The legal decision in Islam regarding an issue.

Hulum (al--) الحلم

puberty, physical maturity

See "buluugh".

Huluul حُلول

Incarnation

The belief that God incarnates in a human body, such as Jesus or Ali ibn Abi Taleb or 'saints', which is an obvious contradiction to the Qur'anic teachings about Allah and His Majesty. (See, for example, the Qur'an 6: 103 and 42: 11.)

Huquuq az-zawjiyyah

حقوق الزّوجيّة

nuptial rights

The rights a spouse has over his or her partner, or the duties of the spouse.

Hurmah (pl. Hurumaat)

حرمة (حرمات)

sanctity, sacred thing

Either sacredness or the thing that is made sacred by the religion.

Hujjah [1] (pl. Hujaj)

حجّة [1] (حُجَج)

conclusive evidence, execuse

This word originally comes from the verb Haajja which means to argue or ask for proof of the opponent's claim. In some contexts the word is also used to mean 'excuse'.

Hujjah [2] حجّة [2] (حجج)

authority

When used to refer to a person, the word means authority in a certain field of learning.

Husn al-khuluq حُسن الخلق

good manners / conduct

The word "khuluq" covers both moral character and good behaviour.

Husn al-mu'aasharah حُسن المعاشرة

good companionship
Living with mates in a fair and good way.

Husnaa (al--) الحسنى

the best
Very often this word is used in the phrase "'asmaa' Allah al-Husnaa", which literally means the best names of Allah or simply "al-'asmaa' al-Husnaa" (the best names). Traditionally, this has been transalted "the Most Beautiful Names / Attributes of Allah".

Husnayayn (al--) الْحُسنَيين

the two best things
This refers to the two alternative outcomes a Muslim fighter for the cause of Allah gets in the battlefield: victory over the enemy or martyrdom (hence entering paradise in the Hereafter).

huud هود

Hood
Name of a prophet that was sent to a tribe in the Arabian Peninsula. (See the Qur'an, 26: 123-40).

I

'ibaadaat (sg. 'ibaadah) عبادات (عبادة)

worship practices
Any act of worship, such as praying and fasting.

'ibaad allaah عباد الله

servants of Allah
Male people. Sometimes, it may include both male and female people.

'ibaadah عبادة

worship
Worship in Islam includes any act of the tongue (such as remembering Allah or saying a good word) or the body (such as praying or helping someone) with the purpose of seeking Divine pleasure. Therefore, charity can be a good deed or even a kind word.

'ibaadat al-awthaan عبادة الأوثان

idol worship
Worshipping idols or inanimate deities, such as statues of different persons. See "wathaniyyah".

'ibaaHah إباحة

permitting, making lawful

'ibaaq إباق

running away
The running away of a slave for no legitimate reason.

'ibliis إبليس

Satan
The name of Satan mentioned in the context of the story of the creation of Adam and Eve in the Qur'an. (See, for example, 15: 30-40).

ibn maryam ابن مريم

Son of Mary
Obviously, the reference is to Jesus (PBUH) whose full name is "'iisaa ibn maryam", being fatherless.

ibn as-sabiil ابن السبيل

way-farer
In the Qur'an this term refers to the person on travel and needs help. He is one of the eight categories of people

who deserve charity and to whom alms (zakaat) may be given. (See the Qur'an, 8:60).

'Ibraahiim إبراهيم

Abraham

The name of the patriarch (father) of the prophets. He had two sons: Ishamael and Isaac. It was he and his son Ishmael who built the Ka'bah in Makkah. He is frequently mentioned in the Qur'an.

'Iddah (pl. 'idad) عدة (عدد)

waiting period

The period after which a divorced woman or a widow may marry again. (See "'iddat aT-Talaaq" and "'iddat al-wafaah").

'Iddat aT-Talaaq عدة الطلاق

divorce waiting period

The time that a divorced woman has to wait before she can remarry. It is either three menstrual periods, three lunar months or the duration of pregnancy, if she is pregnant. (See the Qur'an, 2: 228 and 65: 4).

'iddat al-wafaah عدة الوفاة

widow's waiting period

The time a widowed woman has to spend before she can remarry. For a non-pregnant woman, it is four lunar months and ten days. (See the Qur'an, 2: 234).

'idghaam bighayri ghunnah إدغام بغير غنة

unnasalized / full assimilation

When the /n/ sound is followed by /r/ or /l/ it is fully assimilated to it; i.e., it becomes /r/ or /l/, losing its own characteristics. For example, (min rabbihim) is pronounced (mir-rabbihim).

'idghaam bighunnah إدغام بغنة

nasalized assimilation

When the /n/ sound is followed by /y/, /n/, /m/ or /w/ (as in man ya'mal) it is assimilated to it; i.e., it becomes like it, while the air still comes from the nose. The above example is pronounced ma(n)-yya'mal.

'idhn إذن

permission

The term may refer to actual permission or consent, such as in the case of the woman' s indication of consent to marry someone. In the "Hadiith", a previously married woman should indicate this explicitly, a virgin may indicate it with silence.

'idraak 1 إدراك 1

catching, do in time

Catching the "rak'ah", for example. This means a person joins the "imaam" in congregational prayer before the imaam raises his head from the "rak'ah" (bowing position). "'idraak aS-Salaah" means that one does the prayer before its specified time is over.

'idraak 2 إدراك 2

maturing, coming of age

Reaching the age of puberty, which is the age of legal and religious responsibility in Islam. Another term is "buluugh".

'idriis إدريس

Idrees

A prophet of Allah mentioned in the Qur'an (See 19: 56-7).

'iffah / 'afaaf عفة / عفاف

Chastity

'ifk إفك

serious lie, slander

A common phrase we have in Islamic history is "Hadiith al-ifk" (story of the slander) in which the enemies of Islam fabricated a rumour accusing Ayshah (wife of the Prophet Muhammad {PBUH}) of adultery! (See the Qur'an, 24: 11-18).

'fraad allaah bi-li'ibaadah إفراد الله بالعبادة

worshipping Allah alone

Worshipping Allah alone means that one's prayers or any form of worship should be made directly to Allah and for Him, since Islam strongly rejects the idea of intermediaries between Allah and man or taking partners with Allah..

'Ifshaa' as-salaam

إفشاء السلام

greeting

Greeting by saying "as-salaamu 'alaykum" (Peace be with you).

'Iftaa' إفتاء

giving fatwaa (legal opinion)

Giving the Islamic legal position on an issue, normally by a religious scholar or authority.

'IfTaar إفطار

breaking the fast

Breakfast or not fasting.

Iftaraa (yaftarii) افترى (يفتري)

to fabricate, lie

To make a false claim or story.

Iftiraash افتراش

sitting on left foot

In salat (formal prayer), this means sitting on one's left foot, while the right foot is in an upright position.

Ightaaba (yaghtaab)

اغتاب (يغتاب)

to backbite

To say something bad about someone in his absence, which is strongly condemned by the Qur'an. (See 49: 12).

ightasala (yaghtasil)

اغتسل (يغتسل)

to wash one's body

To wash the whole body, including the head.

ightisaal اغتسال

bathing, having a shower

Washing the whole body, including the head, with the intention of purification. The sunnah is for one to make ablution then wash the whole body, starting from the head.

'iHdaad / Hidaad إحداد/ حداد

mourning

Showing sorrow over a deceased person by observing certain actions or customs. In Islam one should not do that for more than three days, except for the widow who should observe it for four lunar months and ten days. (See "'iddat al-wafaah").

'iHraam إحرام

ritual consecration

A state in which a pilgrim to Makkah observes certain rules, such as wearing the “'iHraam” dress and abstaining from acts forbidden for him such as hunting, wearing perfumes and cutting his hair.

'iHSaan [1] إحصان [1]

consummated marriage

In the punishment for adultery, this is one of the major requirements for "stoning". The other conditions are: freedom, being a Muslim and of legal age.

'iHSaan [2] إحصان [2]

being married

The concept is used in the passive participle form "muHSanah" ,e.g. (See the Qur'an 4: 24)

'iHsaan [1] إحسان [1]

benefaction

Doing good or favours to others or showing them kindness.

'iHsaan [2] إحسان [2]

acting in the best way

The Prophet Muhammad (PBUH) defined this word by saying, “that you worship Allah as if you see Him, for even if you do not see Him He sees you.”

'iHSaar إحصار

hindering

The inability to perform "Hajj" rites due to unforeseen circumstances. The injunction regarding such a case in given in the Qur'an 2:192.

iHtikaar احتكار

monopoly

Monopolizing necessary food stuff is forbidden by Islam.

iHtilaam احتلام

wet dream, nocturnal emission

Having a dream that causes sexual arousal and ejaculation. This requires “ghusl” (washing the whole body) before one can pray or touch the Qur'an or even recite verses from it.

IHtisaab احتساب

for the sake of Allah

Doing something good without expecting reward from a human being.

'IHyaa' al-lyal إحياء الليل

night vigil

Staying awake at night in devotions. Literally, the expression means enlivening the night.

'IHyaa' al-mawaat إحياء الموات

cultivation of virgin land

According to some schools of Islamic law, the term means preparing a lot of unowned land for use, such as residence, stables, or cultivation, by fencing or digging a well. By doing this the person can claim ownership of the lot.

'Iid al-aDHaa عيد الأضحى

Feast of Sacrifice

The feast that occurs on the tenth day of the month of pilgrimage. On this day and the next three days one may slaughter his sacrifice or animal offering.

'iid al-fiTr عيد الفطر

Feast of Breaking the Fast

The feast which marks the end of Ramadan, the month of fasting.

'iijaab إيجاب

offer, proposition

Usually, this refers to a guardian offering his trustee (e.g., daughter) in marriage to someone, saying something like: "I give you my daughter X in marriage…"

'iilaa' إيلاء

vowing continence

A man taking an oath not to sleep with his wife. According to Islamic law, if he insists on doing so after the passage of four months the wife may seek divorce from him. (See the Qur'an, 2: 226).

'iimaa' fiS-Salaah إيماء في الصلاة

miming in prayer

Signalling the motions of the formal prayer (Salaah) with one's head, or even eyes,

instead of going through the actual movements, bowing and prostration, for example. This is permissible if one cannot move his body to perform the prayer.

'iimaan إيمان

faith, belief

Firm conviction and belief in someone or something.

'iisaa ibn maryam عيسى بن مريم

Jesus son of Mary

The Prophet Jesus (PBUH). There are many references in the Qur'an to his miraculous birth (3: 45-47; 19: 16-30), miracles (3: 49), and attempted crucifixion (4: 157), among other things.

'iitaa' az-zakaah إيتاء الزكاة

alms-giving

Paying alms or what some call the poor dues. This is one of the five pillars of Islam. (See "zakaah").

'iithaar إيثار

altruism, selflessness

Giving preference for others over oneself, which is a highly commended act. (See the Qur'an 59:9.)

i'jaaz إعجاز

miraculous nature; inimitability

Very often we have the expression "i'jaaz al-qur'aan" to refer to the miraculous nature of the Qur'an, aspects that prove its supernatural (Divine) origin.

'ijmaa' إجماع

consensus

The agreement of Muslim scholars over a certain issue. It is considered one of the main sources of Islamic jurisprudence.

ijtihaad اجتهاد

informed reasoning

Reasoning carried out by a Muslim, based on his knowledge of the Qur'an and teachings of the Prophet (PBUH), in a matter not specified by either.

'ikhlaaS إخلاص

sincerity, loyalty

This word is used in Islamic

theology in the sense of devoting one's worship to Allah alone and believing in His absolute oneness. Chapter 112 is called "suurat al-'ikhlaaS".

'ikraah إكراه

compulsion

Forcing someone to do something. A Muslim's wrong act under duress or through compulsion is considered invalid.

'ilaah إله

Allah, deity

'ilHaad إلحاد

atheism, disbelief

In the Qur'an (e.g. 22: 25) it refers to wrongful partiality or blasphemy. But in general use it means 'denying the existence of Allah'.

'ilhaam إلهام

inspiration

Normally, this refers to Divine inspiration.

'illah (pl. 'ilal) علة (علل)

reason, cause

The reason behind a certain injuction or ruling.

'ilm al-faraa'iD علم الفرائض

science of inheritance shares

The science which studies methods of distributing the inheritance and calculating the shares of different heirs according to Qur'anic injunctions.

'ilm al-fiqh علم الفقه

science of jurisprudence

The field of knowledge that deals with issues related to worship matters as well as transactions.

'ilm al-firaasah علم الفراسة

physiognomy

The word firaasah has many meanings usually related to keenness of the mind, such discernment, having a keen eye...etc. As a field of knowledge (more an art than a science) it means the ability of judging character by the study of physical features.

'ilm al-Hadiith علم الحديث

science of hadeeth

The science which studies the principles of authenticating the hadeeth text, such as the evaluation of the narrators, chain of narration and methods of transmission.

'ilm al-kalaam علم الكلام

dialectic theology

The study of theology in terms of logic and philosophy.

'ilm al-yaqiin علم اليقين

certainty of knowledge

The certainty one reaches through observation and logical deduction.

'ilm at-tajwiid علم التّجويد

science of Qur'anic recitation

The science which studies the rules of correct recitation of the Qur'an, including enunication of sounds, elongation of vowels and assimilation of the /n/ consonant.

'ilm at-tawHiid علم التّوحيد

theology

The study of issues related to Allah, His attributes, and other matters of belief, such as the belief in the Hereafter, the unseen...etc.

'ilmaaniyyah علمانيّة

secularism

The denial of religious authority in our lives.

'imaam 1 (pl. a'immah)

إمام 1 (أئمة)

leading scholar

The term is used to refer to a leading scholar or a founder of a school of Islamic law, usually in religious subjects, like imaam Bukhaari or imaam Abu Haniifah...etc.

'imaam 2 (pl. a'immah)

إمَــام 2 (أئمّــة)

leader, head

Someone who leads the congregational worship or is head of the Muslim community.

'Imaam al-muslimiin إمَـام المسلمين

leader of the Muslims

Often, this term refers to the caliph or the ruler.

'Imaam raatib إمام راتب

regular imam / leader

The person who regularly leads congregational prayer in a mosque, whether officially appointed or not.

'Imaamah إمامة

Imamate, leadership

Very often, the term refers to religious leadership. (See "imaam").

'Imaamah (pl. 'amaa'im) عمامة (عمائم)

turban

A piece of cloth wound around the top of the head. Wearing it is a sunnah of the Prophet (PBUH).

'Imaamiyyah إمامية

'Imaamiyyah Shi'ites

'Imsaak إمساك

keeping, withholding

This comes from the verb "'amsaka" (to hold). The noun could mean 'holding, keeping, withholding or abstention' depending on the context. In the Qur'an (2: 229) it refers to keeping or retaining the wife.

'injiil إنجيل

Gospel

The Book originally revealed to the Prophet Jesus (PBUH). Now it is found in many forms, which Muslims consider to be distorted or altered.

'innaa lillaahi wa 'innaa 'ilayhi raaji'uun

إنا لله و إنا إليه راجعون

To Allah we belong and to Him we shall return.

See "istarja'a" for comment on this expression.

'inniin [1] عنّين [1]

impotent

A man who cannot perform sexual intercourse especially due to inability to reach erection of his organ.

'inniin [2] عنّين [2]

impotent

The husband's impotence is considered a legitimate ground for the wife to seek divorce.

'inshaa' allaah إن شاء الله

Allah willing

If Allah wills (it). A Muslim is advised to say this expression whenever he talks about doing something in the future, out of humility and recognition of Divine Will being above all wills and circumstances.

'inzaal إنزال

ejaculation

Ejaculation requires major ablution (ghusl), regardless of its cause.

'inZaar إنظار

grant of respite

Giving someone the chance to fulfill an obligation at a later time or date.

'iqaalah إقالة

cancelling

Allowing a party in a transaction to cancel the deal.

'iqaam aS-Salaah إقام الصلاة

performing salat (formal prayer)

This is the second of the five pillars of Islam. It means observing the five daily prayers.

'iqaamah (al--) الإقامة

readiness call

The call which announces that the imam is ready for congregational worship. Its text is similar to the "'adhaan", except that there is an additional sentence which translates, "prayer is being performed".

'iqaamat al-Hadd إقامة الحد

carrying out the Hadd

See "Hadd".

'iqlaab إقلاب

labialization

The labialization of the /n/ sound; i.e., making it /m/, when it is followed by the /b/ sound. (e.g., min ba'd becomes mim-ba'd).

'Iqraar [1] إقرار [1]

acknowledgement

Acknowledging someone else's right over something or simply of being right.

'Iqraar [2] إقرار [2]

confession

Confessing to something or a belief.

'Iqraar [3] إقرار [3]

approving

Indicating approval of an action or saying by somebody else, or at least not expressing disapproval.

'IqT إقط

dried yogurt

Yogurt paste that is dried in the sun. It is one of the categories of food that may be given in "Sadaqat al-fiTr".

Iqtadaa (yaqtadii)

اقتدى (يقتدي)

to emulate

To follow someone as a model for his actions, such as emulating the Prophet (PBUH) or following the imam in congregational worship.

iqtara'a (yaqtari')

اقترع (يقترع)

cast lots

See 'iqtiraa'".

iqtidaa' اقتداء

emulation

Following someone's actions.

iqtiraa' اقتراع

casting lots

Casting lots to randomly choose or be chosen.

iqtiSaaS اقتصاص

seeking retaliation (qiSaaS)

Seeking retaliation, such as the killing of a murderer.

'iraadah إرادة

intention or will

In the expression "'iraadatu-llaah" it means Divine Will.

'iraafah عرافة

soothsaying, divination

The practice of fortune telling and claiming knowledge of the unseen.

'iram إرم

Iram

The name of a nation that

used to live in the Arabian Peninsula long before the advent of Islam. They are also known as 'aad. (See the Qur'an, 84: 6-7).

'irD (pl. 'a'raaD) عرض (أعراض)

honour

Though this word is used often to refer to honour in the sex related matters, it covers one's name and the reputation of his family as well.

'irDaa' إرضاع

breast feeding

Technically, this means suckling a baby, as opposed to "riDaa'(ah)". If this is done five or more times, then the woman becomes a 'foster mother'. Both she and her children become like blood relations to the baby in matters of marriage.

irtadda (yartadd) ارتد (يرتد)

to apostasize

To reject Islam after having accepted it. According to Islamic law, a person who does so deserves capital punishment.

irtidaad ارتداد

apostasy

Rejecting the faith of Islam after having accepted it. (See "riddah").

'iSaabat al-I'ayn إصابة العين

evil eye effect

Being affected by an evil eye, usually of someone jealous of the affected person (al-maHsuud). (See reference to this in the Qur'an 113:5.)

'isbaagh al-wuDuu' إسباغ الوضوء

careful ablution

Properly washing every required member of the body in the ablution.

'isbaal إسبال

letting fall

Making one's garment ("thawb") or "izaar" (loin cloth) too long, below the heel. This is forbidden for men, since it is considered a sign of vanity.

'ishaa' (al--) العشاء

late evening

The time that begins with the

highly recommended act of charity.

Ism (al--) al-a'Zam

الاسم الأعظم

disappearance of the red dusk after sunset.

'IsHaaq إسحاق

Isaac

The second son of the Prophet Abraham (PBUH), born to him after Ishmael. (See the Qur'an, 37: 101-112). He is the father of the Prophet Jacob.

IshtaraTa (yashtariT)

اشترط (يشترط)

to stipulate, set conditions

'ISlaaH dhaat al-bayn

إصلاح ذات البين

peace making

Bringing peace and reconciliation between fighting parties, which is a The Super Name

The Special Name of Allah which comprehends all His Attributes.

'ismaa'iil إسماعيل

Ishmael

The first son born to the Prophet Abraham (PBUH). His mother was Hager. It was Ishamel who helped Abraham to build the Ka'bah in Makkah, and it was he who was offered for sacrifice, not Isaac, as claimed by some people. (See the Qur'an, 37: 100-112). The Prophet Muhammad (PBUH) is a descendant of the Prophet Abraham (PBUH) through his son Ishmael.

'iSmah 1 عصمة 1

infallibility

Protection provided by Allah against sinning, which is normaly given to prophets and messengers of Allah.

'iSmah 2 عصمة 2

right to divorce

A term used in modern times to mean the right to divorce, which is normally in the hands of the husband, but the wife may ask for it in the marriage contract.

'isnaad al-Hadiith إسناد الحديث

citing chain of narrators

Giving the names of the persons involved in trasmitting a certain prophetic tradition up to the Prophet(PBUH).

isqaaT إسقاط

abortion

Normally this refers to natural abortion. Induced abortion is forbidden by Islam, except under specified conditions such as saving the life of the mother.

'israa' إسراء

night journey

The night journey of the Prophet Muhammad (PBUH) from Makkah to Jerusalem. (See the Qur'an, 17: 1). Both the night journey and the 'ascension' ("mi'raaj") occurred on the same night.

'israaf إسراف

wasting, extravagance

Using or spending more than necessary, which is condemned by Islam.

'israafiil إسرافيل

Israfeel

The angel who will blow / sound "al-Suur" (the trumpet) on the Day of Judgement.

ista'aadha (yasti'iidh) استعاذ (يستعيذ)

to seek refuge

Usually, this verb is used in the expression "ista'aadha billaahi" (He sought refuge in Allah) from something bad, such as Satan or Hell fire.

ista'dhana (yasta'dhin) استأذن (يستأذن)

to ask permission

See "isti'dhaan'.

'istakbara (yastakbir) استكبر (يستكبر)

to show arrogance

This verb means that a person assumed a position of "kibr" (vanity and arrogance), hence did not accept the truth.

istarja'a (yastiarji') استرجع (يسترجع)

to seek Divine solace

To say "'innaa lillaahi wa

'innaa 'ilayhi raaji'uun" (To Allah we belong, and to Him we shall return). This is the expression a Muslim should say when misfortune (such as death in the family) befalls him. (See the Qur'an, 2: 156).

istataaba (yastatiib) استتاب (يستتيب)

to ask sb. to repent
See "istitaabah".

isti'aadhah (al--) الإستعاذة

seeking refuge
Often this means seeking refuge in Allah from Satan by reciting: "a'uudhu bi-llaahi min ash-shayTaanir-rajiim" (I seek refuge in Allah from the cursed Satan). It is sunnah to recite this before reading the Qur'an. (See the Qur'an 16: 98).

istibraa' استبراء

ascertaining purity
Making sure that one is clean from impurities like urine or stool. It is also used to mean ascertaining that a woman is not pregnant.

isti'dhaan استئذان

asking permission
Asking permission to enter a house or room, by knocking and announcing oneself and waiting for permission.

istidlaal استدلال

reasoning
A term used in the science of exegesis for those sentences which require certain proofs.

istiftaa' استفتاء

seeking legal opinion on religious matters
Asking a knowledgeable person about the position of Islam on a certain issue or what to do with regards to something.

istighfaar استغفار

asking for forgiveness
Asking Allah for forgiveness. The simplest prayer is "astaghfiru-llaah" (I ask Allah for fogiveness). There are many longer and more elaborate versions. The Prophet (PBUH) recommended this form of

prayer, pointing out that he said it more than seventy times every day.

istiHaaDah استحاضة

false menstruation
Vaginal bleeding other than regular menses.

istiHbaab استحباب

recommending sth.
Literally, the word means 'liking'. Technically, it means considering something commendable or plausible, but not required.

istiHdaad استحداد

removing pubic hair
This could be done through plucking or shaving. It is one of the hygienic practices to be observed by a Muslim.

Istihlaal استهلال

indicating life
Anything on the part of the new born baby medicating that it is alive, at the time of birth.

istiHsaan استحسان

considering sth. better
"As a source of Islamic law, the acceptance of a rule because of its superior equity in comparison with an already established law." (Farouqi)

istiHyaa' استحياء

shyness, bashfulness
See also "Hayaa'".

Istiilaad استيلاد

impregnating a slave
The master's impregnating his own slave girl. Upon the birth of the child she becomes "'umm walad". Therefore, he cannot sell her, and she becomes free upon his death. Naturally, the child is considered a legitimate child of the master.

istijmaar استجمار

cleansing with pebbles
Cleansing the private parts (after the call of nature) with pebbles or any other object, such as toilet paper. Bones are to be avoided.

istikbaar استكبار

arrogance, being arrogant
This is the verbal noun from "istakbara".

Istikhaarah استخارة

seeking Divine guidance

Seeking Divine guidance in an important matter. The usual procedure is praying two “rak‘ahs” after which one says some prayers asking Allah’s guidance in the affair, by facilitating it if it is good, and by making it unattainable if it is bad for the supplicant.

Istikhlaaf استخلاف

appointing a successor / trustee

Appoint someone to be successor. In the Qur'anic context, the word would be best translated as appointing a trustee or vicegerent.

ISTilaaH اصطلاح

technical term

A word or expression used by specialists with a specific meaning (technical term).

Istimnaa' استمناء

masturbation

Masturbation is forbidden in Islam, and if ejaculation occurs one has to have “ghusl” (wash the whole body) before he can pray or touch the Qur'an.

istinbaaT استنباط

deduction, inference

The process of deriving certain rules or meanings from a text.

istinjaa' استنجاء

cleaning private parts

Washing the private parts of the body to remove the urine or stool.

istinshaaq استنشاق

sniffing water

Sniffing water and squeezing it out of the nose in order to cleanse the nostrils, in the process of ablution.

Istiqaamah [1] استقامة [1]

uprightness

Living according to the teachings of Islam, carefully observing its injunctions and prohibitions in ones's actions. (See the Qur'an 41: 30.)

Istiqaamah [2] استقامة [2]

righteousness

Literally, this means living a 'straight' life, following the teachings of Islam.

istiqbaal al-qiblah استقبال القبلة

facing the Ka'bah

Facing the Ka'bah is required in formal prayers ("Salaah") and recommended when making supplications.

istishhaad استشهاد

martyrdom

Dying for the Cause of Allah, such as while fighting the enemies of the faith.

istislaam استسلام

submission, surrender

In the Islamic religious context this refers to submitting totally to Allah's Will.

istisqaa' استسقاء

praying for rain

See "Salaat al-istisqaa'".

istitabah استتابة

asking sb. to repent

To tell someboy that he or she should repent from some sinful act, such as neglecting formal prayers ("Salaah") or saying blasphemous things.

i'taaq إعتاق

manumission

See "'itq".

i'tanaqa (ya'taniq) al-islaam اعتنق (يعتنق) الإسلام

embrace Islam

To convert to Islam.

i'tamar (ya'tamir) اعتمر (يعتمر)

to make 'umrah (lesser pilgrimage)

See "'umrah".

'iTbaaq إطباق

velarization

Raising the rear part of the tongue while producing a certain sound. (See "tafkhiim" too).

'ithm (pl. 'aathaam) إثم (آثام)

sin, wrong doing

Any act that violates the teachings of Islam.

'ithnaa 'ashriyyah اثنا عشرية

Twelvers

A sub-sect of the Shi'ites who believe in twelve "imaams'.

I'tidaad اعتداد

being in waiting period

To be in the waiting period before getting married again, such as the duration of pregnancy of a divorced woman.

I'tikaaf اعتكاف

retreat (in mosque)

Staying (usually, a few days) in a mosque for devotions, and going out only for necessary things.

lTmi'naan fiS-Salaah اطمئنان في الصلاة

proper performance of prayer

One of the conditions to be observed while performing the prayer is the observance of propriety in the sense of standing, bowing, prostrating, and sitting in a slow, respectful manner, remembering that one is in the presence of the Almighty Allah.

'itq raqabah عتق رقبة

manumission of a slave

Setting a slave free, which is a very highly recommended act of charity. Sometimes, it is required in expiation of certain sins.

ittaqaa (yattaqii) اتقى (يتقي)

to seek protection (from hell fire)

Many Muslims have translated the word into "to fear Allah" or "be righteous". The idea here is probably that one seeks protection from Allah's wrath and punishment by obeying Him (fearing Him).

'iyaadat al-mariiD عيادة المريض

visiting the sick

Visiting a sick Muslim is a recommended act of charity.

'izaar (pl. 'uzur) إزار (أزر)

loin-cloth

A piece of cloth worn around the loins to cover the lower part of the body. It is like a skirt, worn by men.

‘iZah (pl. ‘iZaat) عظة (عظات)

sermon, exhortation

A religious talk given in preaching.

'iZhaar إظهار

clear enunciation

The clear enunciation of the /n/ or /m/ sounds in the recitation of the Qur'an, which is done when these consonants are followed by certain sounds, such as “hamza” (glottal stop) and “haa’” (/h/).

‘izraa'iil عزرائيل

Izraa'eel

The name of the angel of death, according to popular Islamic traditions.

J

jaabii (pl. jubaah) جابي (جباة)

tax collector

The person in charge of collecting taxes and alms on behalf of the government.

jaahara (yujaahir) جاهر (يجاهر)

to publicize

This term is often used with wrong acts and sinning to mean doing them in public or announcing them by the sinner.

jaahiliyyah (al--) الجاهلية

dark ignorance, pre-Islamic era

The time of ignorance is used to refer to the historical era in Arabia before Islam. The term is sometimes used to refer to any un-Islamic practices.

jaa'iz جائز

permissible

The opposite of "Haraam" (forbidden). It is synonymous to "Halaal".

jaaluut جالوت

Goliath

The tyrant king of the disbelievers who was killed by the Prophet David. (See the Qur'an, 2: 250-251).

jaami' (al--) الجامع

The Gatherer

A Divine Attribute of Allah. The One Who brings all beings and things (including the opposites) together.

jaami' (jawaami')

جامع (جوامع)

central mosque

The word is short for al-masjid al-jaami' (the mosque that brings people together). It is often used to refer to a mosque where Friday services are held, since in many Muslim countries not all mosques are used for that purpose.

jaaza (yajuuz) جاز (يجوز)

to be permissible

Not be forbidden.

jaann (sg. jinniyy) جان (جني)

Jinn

Beings created from fire, and not normally visible to humans. It is believed that they may assume different visible forms. The message of Islam is directed to them just as it is to human beings. (See the Qur'an, 72; 46: 29-32; 55: 15).

jaariyah (pl. jawaarii) جارية (جواري)

young girl, bondswoman

The word was used for both meanings: a young girl or a bondswoman. But nowadays it is often used in the second sense, literally or figuratively.

Jaar(un) junub جار جنب

far neighbour

A neighbour who is not next door. It could also mean a neighbour who is a relative.

jabbaar (al--) الجبار

The Highest Potentate

A Divine Attribute of Allah. The One Who makes everyone and everything obey His will.

jabriyyah (al--) الجبرية

predeterminism / predeterminists

The denial of all forms of free will, or the followers of such a belief.

jadha' aD-Da'n جذع الضأن

one year old sheep

A sheep that has completed one year of age. Jadha' is also used with goats with same meaning.

jadha' al-'ibil جذع الإبل

four year old camel

A camel that has completed four years of age.

jaHada[1] (yajHad) جحد ١ (يجحد)

to reject, deny

In the context of religious precepts and rituals, the word means to reject them or deny their importance.

jaHada[2] (yalHad) جحد ٢ (يجحد)

to show ingratitude

With reference to favours, the verb means to deny them and be ungrateful.

jahannam جهنم

Hell

jaHiim جحيم

Hell-fire

jahr جهر

reciting aloud

Reciting the Qur'anic verses aloud in the standing position in the "Salaah" performed during the night (sunset, late evening and dawn).

jahriyyah (Salaah --) جهرية (صلاة)

loud prayers

The term refers to the mode of reciting the Qur'an in the standing position of the Salaah. The prayers during which this is done aloud is called "Salaah jahriyyah", as opposed to "sirriyyah" (secret). The prayers done during the night (sunset, late evening and dawn) fall under this category.

jald جلد

flogging

See "jaldah".

jaldah (pl. jaldaat) جلدة (جلدات)

lash

In the punishment by flogging, usually the number of lashes is determined by the kind of crime, such as 80 or 100 lashes.

jaliil (al--) الجليل

The Ever-Majestic

A Divine Attribute of Allah. The One Whose Majesty is incomprable.

jamaa'ah جماعة

group, congregation

We find this word in expressions like "Salaat al-jamaa'ah" (congregational prayer) and "jamaa'at al-muslimiin" (the Muslim community)...etc.

Jamaa'ah 'uduul جماعة عدول

men of integrity

Good Muslim men who observe their religious duties and have moral integrity.

jamaraat (sg. jamrah) جمرات (جمرة)

stoning sites

The sites where a pilgrim throws seven pebbles at each pillar (symbolizing Satan). There are three such sites at Mina, near Makkah: the major, the middle and the minor.

jam' جمع

combining

Combining two prayers (noon and afternoon or sunset and late evening) by performing them at the time of either.

jam' Salaatayn جمع صلاتين

combining two prayers

See "jam'".

Jam' ta'khiir جمع تأخير

delayed combining

In the context of the "Salaah", this means combining either "Zuhr" and "'aSr" (noon and afternoon) or "maghrib" and "'ishaa'" (sunset and late evening) prayers and performing them at the time of the second of the pair (afternoon and late evening).

jam' taqdiim جمع تقديم

advanced combining

In the context of the "Salaah", this means combining either "Zuhr" and "'aSr" (noon and afternoon) or "maghrib" and "'ishaa'" (sunset and late evening) prayers and performing them at the time of the first of the pair (noon and sunset).

jamhuur (al--) الجمهور

the majority

Usually, this means the majority of scholars.

Jamrah (pl. jamaraat / jimaar) جمرة (جمرات / جمار)

stoning pillar

The pillar which people believe to symbolize Satan at Mina. There are three pillars which a pilgrim has to stone as a part of the Hajj ritual. The stoning means throwing seven pebbles, one by one, at the pillar while saying "Allahu akbar".

jamrah (al--) aS-Sughraa الجمرة الصغرى

the small stoning pillar

The third of the pillars pilgrims have to stone (by throwing seven pebbles, one by one, as a part of the Hajj rituals.

jamrah (al--) al-wusTaa الجمرة الوسطى

the middle stoning pillar

The second of the pillars pilgrims have to stone (by throwing seven pebbles, one by one, at) as a part of the Hajj rituals.

jamrat al-'aqabah جمرة العقبة

'Aqabah stoning pillar

The largest of the three pillars pilgrims have to stone by throwing seven pebbles, one by one, at them.

janaabah جَنابة

state of major impurity

The state of ritual impurity as a result of having sex or a wet dream. A Muslim is not supposed to pray or touch the Qur'an or even recite it until he / she has "ghusl" (a full shower, washing the whole body).

janaazah (janaa'iz) جنازة (جنائز)

funeral

The word is used to refer to a funeral procession too.

jannah (pl. jannaat) جنة (جنات)

garden, paradise

Originally, the word means a garden. But it is often used to refer to the Garden of Eden or Paradise.

jannah / jannaat ‘adn

جنة / جنات عدن

Garden(s) of Eden

Some Qur'an exegesists say that "‘adn" means 'stay and eternity'.

jarH (al--) (wat-ta‘dill)

الجرح و التعديل

discrediting and endorsement

A procedure in the science of hadeeth authentication in which the transmitters or reporters of the text are evaluated on the basis of their merits of piety, memory and general moral integrity.

jawaaz جواز

lawfulness, permissibility

See "jaa'iz".

jazaa' جزاء

repayment, requital

Good or bad repayment (reward or punishment).

jazaa (yajizii) جزى (يجزي)

to give one his due

The verb is neutral in the sense that what one is given could be good ("khayr") or bad ("sharr"), whichever one deserves. Therefore, if we want to thank someone we should say: "jazaak Allahu khayran."

jazaakum / jazaak allaahu khayra(n) جزاكم / جزاك الله خيرًا

May Allah reward you.

An expression usually said to express gratitude. A common mistake is saying: "jazaakum Allaah" only, because this does not specify the reward. (See "jazaa'").

jazuur جَزور

slaughtered camel

Usually, we see "laHm al-jazuur" (camel meat), the eating of which may require one to have ablution before praying in the Hanbali school of Islamic law.

Jibaayah جباية

collecting taxes

The process of collecting taxes and alms.

Jibriil جبريل

Gabriel

According to Islamic teachings, Gabriel was the angel who used to bring down the revelations from Allah to His messengers.

Jibt جبت

idol

Something worshipped by polytheists.

jihaad جهاد

self-exertion, striving, holy war

The term means exerting a great effort, but it has come to mean exerting a great effort in the Cause of Allah, more specifically in the form of fighting.

jihaad an-nafs جهاد النفس

fighting the tempting self

The term refers to controlling oneself by forcing it to do righteous deeds and shun wrong ones.

jilbaab (pl. jalaabiib) جلباب (جلابيب)

overgarment

For women, this refers to a garment normally worn over regular garments such as dresses.

jimaa' جماع

copulation, sex act

Copulation leads to "janaabah" which requires washing the whole body to attain ritual purity.

jinnah (sg. jinniyy) جنة (جني)

jinn

See "jaann".

jizyah جزية

protection tax

The head tax paid by non-Muslim citizens to the Islamic state which is responsible for their protection.

ju'gl (pl. ju'uul) جُعل (جعول)

payment, wage

juHfah (al--) الْجُحفة

Juhfah

Name of the place where people coming from west the Red Sea to start their status of "iHraam" on their way to Mecca for "'umrah" or "Hajj". Today it is in the neighborhood of Raabigh in Saudi Arabia.

juluus جلوس

sitting

In formal prayers, this is the position in which a person bends his knees and sits on his legs, with the right foot in vertical position, its toes touching the ground. This is similar to genuflection except that one's buttocks rest fully on the legs.

jum'ah (al--) الجمعة

Friday

Friday is a special day in Islam. We are told by the Prophet (PBUH) that Adam was created on this day and entered Paradise on this day.

jumaadaa al-'uulaa

جمادى الأولى

Jumada the First

The name of the fifth month of the Islamic calendar.

jumaadaa ath-thaaniyah

جمادى الثانية

Jumada the Second

The name of the sixth month of the Islamic calendar.

junaaH جُناح

sin, wrong

This word is usually found with the negative particle "laa" (no): "laa JunaaH" (There is no sin or anything wrong with...)

junub جُنُب

In a state of major ritual impurity

See "janaabah".

juz' (pl. 'ajzaa') جزء (أجزاء)

part

The Holy Qur'an is divided into 30 'ajzaa' (roughly equal parts), each consisting of two "Hizbs".

K

kaafir (pl. kuffaar / kaafiruun)
كافر (كفار / كافرون)

unbeliever

Someone who does not believe in Islam and its teachings.

kaahin (pl. kuhhaan/ kahanah)
كاهن (كهان / كهنة)

diviner, soothsayer

A person who claims knowledge of the future.

kaatib (pl. kuttaab) al-waHy
كاتب (كتاب) الوحي

revelation scribe

A companion of the Prophet (PBUH) who used to write the Qur'anic revelations as dictated by the Prophet (PBUH).

kaaZim al-ghayZ **كاظم الغيظ**

suppressor of anger

Someone who controls his tempter and does not allow rage to take control of him. Controlling one's temper is a highly recommended act.

ka'bah (al--) **الكعبة**

Ka'bah

The cubic building in the centre of the Holy Mosque of Makkah, originally built by the Prophet Abraham and his son Ishmael. It is the first house of Allah ever known to mankind.

kabbara (ykabbiru)
كبر (يكبر)

to say "Allaahu 'akbar"

Originally, the word means to magnify or enlarge. But it is normally used in the first sense given above.

kabiirah (pl. kabaa'ir)
كبيرة (كبائر)

major sin

Any sin that is punishable by "Hadd", such as murder, fornication, drinking…etc.

kabiir (al--) **الكبير**

The Ever Great

A Divine Attribute of Allah.

The One Whose greatness surpasses that of every other being.

kadhaba (yakdhib) كذب (يكذب)

to lie

Not to tell the truth. Lying is strongly condemned in Islam, and it its considered a sign of hypocrisy.

kadhdhaba (yukadhdhib) كذّب (يكذّب)

to disbelieve, belie

To reject the truth of something.

kadhib [1] كذب [1]

telling lies

Not telling the truth.

kadhib [2] كذب [2]

falsehood

Opposite of truth.

kafaalat an-nafs كفالة النفس

guarantee of person

Taking the responsibility of making sure that the bailed person will be present when so required.

kafaalat ad-dayn كفالة الدين

guarantee of debt

This means the guarantor is responsible for making sure that debt is paid back one way or another.

kafan (pl. akfaan) كفن (أكفان)

shroud

The cloth used to enshroud the corpse of a person.

kafara (yakfur) كفر (يكفر)

to disbelieve

To disbelieve or announce the rejection of faith in Allah or any of His commandments.

kaffaarah (pl. kaffaaraat) كفارة (كفارات)

atonement, expiation

An act (specified by Islam) carried out by a Muslim for committing a wrong (such as involuntary man- slaughter) or not observing an obligation

(such as not observing the fast during Ramadan by certain excused people). It includes, among others, feeding a number of poor people or fasting a number of days.

kaffara[1] (yukaffir) كفر 1 (يكفر)

to declare sb. unbeliever

To declare that someone is an unbeliever or has disbelieved, because of a certain deed or words said by him, such as denying the oneness of Allah or denying the necessity of performing the five daily prayers.

kaffara[2] (yukaffir) كفر 2 (يكفر)

to atone, expiate

To do something in order to atone for a sin or for not doing something one swore to Allah to do. (See "kaffaarah").

Kahaanah كهانة

soothsaying

Soothsaying is considered a form of polytheism, since the soothsayer claims knowledge of the unseen. A Muslim is forbidden from visiting a soothsayer or believing his words.

kalaam allaah كلام الله

Words of Allah, the Qur'an

The Qur'an is considered the exact words of Allah revealed to the Prophet Muhammad (PBUH) through Archangel Gabriel.

kaliim allaah كليم الله

Speaker to Allah

Literally, this means the one spoken to by Allah. It refers in Islamic writings to Prophet Moses to whom Allah spoke at Mount Sinai. (See the Qur'an 4:164.)

kalimat ash-shahaadah

كلمة الشهادة

Declaration of Faith

Saying: "ashhadu an-laa ilaaha illa-llaah wa ashhadu anna muHammadan rasuulu-llaah."

(I bear witness that there is no deity except Allah, and I bear witness that Muhammad is the messenger of Allah).

karaahah كراهة

reprehensibility, aversion

Considering something reprehensible or distasteful.

karaamah (pl. karaamaat) كرامة (كرامات)

extraordinary act

This term literally means 'a sign of honour' and refers to supernatural acts (like walking on water). It is used in conjunction with saints or men of Allah other than the prophets, for whom the word "mu'jizah" (miracle) is used.

kariim (al--) الكريم

The Most Generous

A Divine Attribute of Allah. The One Whose bounties and favours know no limits.

karrama allaahu wajhahu كرم الله وجهه

May Allah honour his face

This expression is often used instead of "raDiya allaahu 'anhu" (May Allah be pleased with him) especially when Muslims speak of Ali, cousin of the Prophet (PBUH) and his son-in-law. It has been said that he was the only early convert to Islam who never prostrated to an idol, since he adopted Islam at a very young age. This expression presumably refers to that fact.

kataba (yaktub) allaah [1] كتب (يكتب) الله [1]

Allah enjoined, ordained

This is one of the senses of the word as used in the Qur'an and other Islamic texts. We may find this verb in the passive form "kutiba 'alaykum" meaning "it has been ordained upon you (by Allah)."

kataba (yaktub) allaah 2

كتب (يكتب) الله 2

Allah destined, foreordained

In the Qur'an we find verses where this verb (active and passive forms)
is used in the sense of predestination.

katama (yaktum) al-Haqq

كتم (يكتم) الحق

to conceal the truth

To withhold information in order to hide the truth. The Qur'an warns us not to do that (See the Qur'an, 2:42).

katm/kitmaan ash-shahaadah

كتم / كتمان الشهادة

concealing testimory

Not giving testimony, when asked to give it. This is considered a sin, as we can see from the Qur'an (2: 283).

kawthar (al--) الكوثر

River of Abundance

The river promised by Allah to the Prophet Muhammad (PBUH) in the Hereafter. (See Chapter 108 of the Qur'an).

kaZm al-gḫayZ كظم الغيظ

controlling temper

Literally, this means suppressing rage. This act is considered one of the qualities of a good believer. In the hadeeth we are advised to change our position (from standing to sitting) and even make ablution as a measure to fight loss of temper.

khaafiD (al--) الخافض

The Supreme Debaser

A Divine Attribute of Allah. The One Who debases and brings humiliation to sinners.

khaala'at (tukhaali')

خالعت (تخالع)

to seek khul'

A woman may seek separation from her husband through the procedure known as "khul'" or "mukhaala'ah". In this type of agreement the

wife may have to pay back the dower given to her by the husband and agree to pay for other expenses as well.

khaaliq (al--) الخالق

The Creator

A Divine Attribute of Allah. The One Who created everything and everyone from nothing.

khaashi' خاشع

humble, submissive

An attribute of the good believer is to be humble and submissive in his prayers. (See the Qur'an, 23: 2).

khaatam al-'anbiyaa' / an-nabiyyiin خاتم الأنبياء / النبيين

Seal of the Prophets

The reference is to the Prophet Muhammad (PBUH) who has been the last and most important in a chain of prophets and messengers sent by Allah. So there would be no prophet after him. (See the Qur'an, 33: 40).

khaatam an-nubuwwah خاتم النبوة

seal of prophecy

A special seal-like mark between the shoulders of the Prophet Muhammad (PBUH).

khaaTib (pl. khuTTaab) خاطب (خطاب)

suitor

A man who is asking for someone's hand.

khaaTibah خاطبة

female matchmaker

A woman who helps in selecting future grooms and brides for people.

khabar al-'aaHaad خبر الآحاد

uniquely reported

A tradition that has been reported by a single narrator, as opposed to "khabar mutawaatir" (reported by many).

khabar mutawaatir خبر متواتر

well attested report

A report or tradition reported by a large number of transmitters.

khabiir (al--) الخبير

The Ever-Cognizant

A Divine Attribute of Allah. The One Who is knowledgeable of the most secret of things and affairs.

khabiith خبيث

bad, wicked, impure

Sometimes, the word is used to refer to Satan.

khalaf (al--) الخلَف

succeeding generation(s)

The generations that came later.

khaliifah 1 (pl. khulafaa') خليفة 1 (خلفاء)

caliph, successor

Originally, someone who succeeded the Prophet (PBUH). Later, it came to be used to refer to all the heads of the Islamic State, until the last Ottoman ruler.

khaliifah 2 (pl. khulafaa') خليفة 2 (خلفاء)

vicegerent, viceroy

In the Qur'an, the term is used to refer to a vicegerent, someone who rules on earth, so to speak, on behalf of Allah. So Adam was made a "khaliifah". (See the Qur'an, 2: 30). And so was David (See the Qur'an, 38: 26).

khaliifah (al--) ar-raashid الخليفة الراشد

the righteous caliph

The righteous successor to the Prophet (PBUH), Abu Bakr al-Siddiiq or any of his three successors. (See "al-khulafaa' ar-raashiduun").

khaliil allaah خليل الله

friend of Allah

This was a title given to the Prophet Abraham. The term "khaliil" implies close

intimacy, as opposed to "Sadiiq", which does not have this connotation.

khalq خلق

physical form, looks

The structure and form of the various parts of the body. It could also mean the general appearance of a person.

khalwah (pl. khalaawii)

خلوة (خلاوي)

secluded place

Sometimes, the term is used to refer to a (secluded) area in a mosque, for example, where religious teaching takes place.

khalwah (pl. khalawaat)

خلوة (خلوات)

being alone, solitude

The term could mean being alone with oneself or with someone. For example, it is forbidden in Islam for a man to be in "khalwah" with a woman who is a stranger to him.

khamr (pl. khumuut)

خمر (خمور)

wine, alcoholic drink

Any alcoholic drink that may cause intoxication is called "khamr", and it is forbidden for a Muslim to consume or even deal with (such as buying and selling).

kharaaj خراج

land tax

Land tax paid to the Muslim treasury which was paid by non-Muslims.

khashyat allaah خشية الله

fear of Allah

Reverence to Allah and fear of His punishment.

khaSiyy (pl. khiSyan)

خصي (خصيان)

eunuch, castrate

A man whose testicles have been removed.

khaTii'ah (pl. khaTaayaa)

خطيئة (خطايا / خطيئات)

Sin

Something forbidden by the religion.

khaTiibah خطيبة

fiancée

A female who has been engaged, but not married yet. According to Islamic law, her fiance is considered a 'stranger' in all regards. She even has to observe the "Hijaab" (veiling) with him.

khatm an-nubuwwah 1 ختم النبوة 1

sealing of prophethood

Indicating that Muhammad (PBUH) is the last prophet and messenger of Allah. No prophet of messenger would ever come after him, and anyone who claims prophecy has to be false. (See the Qur'an 33:40.) Besides the Qur'an there are many authentic prophetic traditions that emphasize this point.

khatm an-nubuwwah 2 ختم النبوة 2

finality of prophethood

Allah's sending the last and final prophet and messenger to this world.

khatm al-qur'aan ختم القرآن

finishing the Qur'an

Finishing the recitation or reading of the whole Qur'an. Many pious Muslims observe the practice of reading the whole Qur'an in a specific number of days, weeks or months.

khawaarij (al--) الخوارج

Kharijites (the rebels)

A fanatic group of Muslims who believed that the Caliph Ali ibn Abi Taleb and Mu'aawiyah as well others were all unbelievers, and should be killed. They were responsible for the assassination of the fourth Righteous Caliph Ali (RAA).

khawaatiim al-'a'maal

خواتيم الأعمال

the last deeds / actions

The last thing one does in this life, for example.

khawaatiim as-suurah

خواتيم السورة

concluding verses

The last verses of a chapter in the Qur'an, such as the last two or three verses of Chapter 2, which are highly recommended to be recited by a Muslim at dawn and sunset.

khayr al-quruun خير القرون

the best generation(s)

Quruun literally means 'centuries', but the "Hadiith" which says: "khayr al-quruun qarnii thumma al-ladhiin yaluunahum thumma al-ladhiina yaluunahum..." has been translated as: "The best generation is mine, then the following one, then the next..."

Khayr 1 (pl. khayraat)

خيــر 1 (خيرات)

good deed or thing

khayr 2 خيــر 2

better, superior

The word means both good and better. The expression "bi-khayr" means 'well' or 'in good condition'.

khazraj (al--) خزرج (ال ...)

Khazraj

One of the two main Arab tribes of Medina at the time of the Prophet Muhammad (PBUH).

khiDr (al--) خضر (ال ...)

the Khidr

Muslim scholars say that this is the name of the pious man of knowledge referred to in the Chapter of the Cave in the Qur'an from whom the Prophet Moses sought to learn. (See the Qur'an, 18: 66-83).

Khilaafah خلافـــة

caliphate

Succession in heading the Muslim community, as a ruler. Originally, it meant succeeding the Prophet (PBUH) in heading the Muslim community. The first "khaliifah" was a successor to the Prophet, and each one was successor to the preceding one.

khimaar (pl. khumur)

خِمَار (خُمُر)

veil, head cover

Any scarf like piece of cloth used to cover the whole head and neck and may also be used to cover the bosom of a woman. (See the Qur'an, 24:31).

khitaan خِتـــان

circumcision

Circumcision or removing the foreskin of the penis is required by Islam for all males.

khiTbah خِطبـــة

betrothal, asking to mary

Asking for someone's hand in marriage.

Khiyaanah خيانة

treachery, infidelity

This involves deception breach of agreements and promises and failing a trust as well as infidelity.

khiyaant al-'ahd/ al-'amaanah

خيانة العهد/ الأمانة

breach of a trust

In the "Hadiith" it is considered one of the four signs of a hypocrite.

khubth (al--) wa al-khabaa'ith

الخبث و الخبائث

evil male and female spirits

The Prophet (PBUH) instructed Muslims to seek refuge in Allah from these spirits whenever they enter a bathroom.

khuff (pl. akhfaaf)

خف (أخفاف)

light boot

This was like a sock made of leather, similar to boots.

khul' خُلْع

khul'

The arrangement in which the wife seeks divorce through making a deal with her husband, such as returning his dower and paying for the wedding expenses.

khulafaa' (al--) ar-raashiduun

الخلفاء الراشدون

The Righteous Caliphs

The four heads of the Muslim community who succeeded the Porphet Muhammad (PBUH): Abu Bakr aS-Siddiiq, 'umar ibn al-Khattaab, 'uthmaan ibn 'affaan and 'aliyy ibn abii Taalib.

khuluq خلق

manners, morality

The term is a comprehensive one that covers the moral and behavioural aspects of a person. It is reported that the Prophet Muhammad (PBUH) whenever he looked in a mirror he used to pray: "O Allah, make my khuluq (manners) as good as my khalq (looks).

khunthaa (pl. khanaathii)

خنثى

hermaphrodite, bisexual

A person whose gender cannot be determined due to having both male and female sexual organs or neither of them.

khushuu' خشوع

submissiveness, humility

The attitude one should show when praying or supplicating.

Khusuuf خسوف

lunar eclipse

khuTbah (pl. khuTab)

خطبة (خطب)

sermon, speech

khuTbat al-'iid خطبة العيد

Eid sermon

The sermon given on the day of the Feast of Breaking the Fast, or of Sacrifice. Unlike Friday, the sermon is given after the prayer.

khuTbat al-Haajah خطبة الحاجة

wedding sermon

See "khuTbat an-nikaaH".

khuTbat al-jumu'ah خطبة الجمعة

Friday sermon

The sermon given by the imam on Friday congregational service. The service consists of a two-part sermon, followed by two "rak'ahs" of prayer.

khuTbat an-nikaaH خطبة النكاح

wedding sermon

A sermon given on the occasion of a wedding ceremony. Sometimes, it is called "khuTbat al-Haajah".

khuTbat al-wadaa' خطبة الوداع

The Farewell Sermon

The sermon given by the Prophet Muhammad (PBUH) on the ninth day of the month of pilgrimage at 'Arafah to the largest crowd of pilgrims ever seen until then. It was a comprehensive speech, declaring, among many other issues, oneness of mankind and their equality in the sight of Allah.

kibr كبر

arrogance, haughtiness

The feeling that one is superior to others; hence, they do not deserve his respect nor his accepting their advice.

kibriyaa' كبرياء

greatness, self-respect

Greatness and self-respect. For Allah, this includes majesty. (See the Qur'an, 45: 37).

kitaabiyy (pl. ahl al-kitaab) كتابي (أهل الكتاب)

member of the people of the Scripture

A Christian or Jew, who are called in the Qur'an "ahl al-kitaab".

kitaabiyyah كتابيّة

Christian or Jewish woman

According to Islamic law, a Muslim man may marry a chaste "kitaabiyyah". (See the Qur'an 5:5.).

Kufr كفر

disbelief

The word means denying Allah's favours or rejecting His authority.

kufrun bawaaH كفر بواح

clear blasphemy

An act that is definitely contrary to Islamic teachings.

kuswat al-ka'bah كسوة الكعبة

Ka'bah cover

The cloth used to cover the Ka'bah. It is made of black silk and decorated with Qur'anic verses embroidered with gold threads.

L

laa Hawla wa laa quwwata illaa bi-llaah لا حول و لا قوة إلا بالله

No power nor might except from Allah

This expression is a highly recommended form of prayer. It is often said by a Muslim to find solace, especially when faced with difficulties.

laa 'ilaaha ill-allaah لا إله إلا الله

There is no deity except Allah

This is a negation of the existence of any type of deity with the exception of Allah. It is the motto of Islam.

laahuut لاَهُوت

theology

laat (al--) اللات

Lat

Name of an idol that was worshipped by pagans in Arabia.

la'nah لعنة

curse, damnation

Dismissing from the mercy of Allah, or depriving one of Divine blessing.

labbayk allaahumma لبيك اللهم

I dutifully answer, my Lord

I am responding dutifully to your command or call. This is the expression often repeated by pilgrims.

laghw لَغو

idle talk

In the case of an oath, this means an oath said unintentionally.

laHd (pl. luHuud) لحد (لُحُود)

grave

Technically, this is the hollow part of a grave where a corpse is placed.

laHm khinziir لحم الخنزير

pig's meat

Pig's meat as well as any part of a pig's body is considered

impure and forbidden for Muslims to eat or even use.

lawh al-Hadiith لَهْوُ الحديث

vain talk, futile discourse

Islam discourages its followers from wasting their time in useless things, including vain talk.

lamam لَمَم

minor offences

Unintentional minor offences or mistakes.

lamaza (yalmiz) لَمَز (يلمز)

to slander

To find fault with others or speak ill of them, directly or by insinuation.

laqiiT لَقِيط

foundling

A baby whose parents are unknown.

laTiif (al--) اللطيف

The Ever-Kindly

A Divine Attribute of Allah. The One Who is Kind to His creation, or Who is too Subtle for people to know His identity.

lawH (al--) al-maHfuuz اللوح المحفوظ

Divine-Protected Tablet

The Depository of all the Divine decrees and willed events, ordained by Allah, since the beginning of creation. (See the Qur'an, 85: 22).

laylat al-qadr ليلة القدر

the Night of Power / Esteem

The night of the 27th of Ramadan is believed to be the night called "laylat al-qadr" referred to in the Qur'an, Chapter 97.

li'aan لِعان

mutual cursing

See "mulaa'anah".

libaas al-'iHraam لباس الإحرام

pilgrim's dress

The special clothing worn by a pilgrim. For men, two sheets of seamless white

cloth, one for the upper half of the body ("ridaa'") and the other for the lower half ("'izaar"); for women, a plain proper dress.

lukhuf / likhaaf (sg. lukhfah) لخف / لخاف (لخفة)

white slates

White slates were sometimes used in the early days of Islam for writing.

luqmaan لُقْمان

Luqman

A sage, pious man to whom reference is made in the Qur'an, Chapter 31.

luqaTah لُقَطَة

found object

There are certain rules to be observed by a Muslim in handling a found object, be it animate or inanimate, such as announcing about it for a certain period of time before taking it.

luuT لُوط

Lot

Name of the prophet who was a nephew of the Prophet Abraham (PBUH), we are told. He was sent to a people that practiced homosexuality and were severely punished by Allah. (See the Qur'an, 26: 160-174).

luuTiyy لُوطي

homosexual, sodomite

luwaaT لُوّاط

homosexuality, sodomy

Homosexuality is considered a major sin in Islam. (See the Qur'an, 26: 160-74).

M

maajid (al--) الماجد

The Glorious

A Divine Attribute of Allah. The One Who deserves real glorification.

maal (pl. 'amwaal) مال (أموال)

money, wealth

It may be used to mean possessions.

maalik [1] مالك [1]

master, owner

The word comes from the verb "malaka" to possess. We find this word in this sense in "suurat al-faatiHah" (Opening Chapter) as well as in many other parts of the Qur'an.

maalik [2] مالك [2]

Malik

The name of the guard of Hell. (See the Qur'an, 43: 77).

maalik [3] مالك [3]

Malik

The founders of one of the major schools of Islamic law. He was born in and taught at Medina, and is known as a traditionalist. His school of thought ("madhhab") is commonly followed in Africa.

maalik al-mulk مالك الملك

The Ruler of the Dominion

A Divine Attribute of Allah. Master of the universe or the King of kings.

maalikiyy (pl. maalikiyyah) مالكي (مالكية)

Malikite

Follower of imam Malik.

maalikiyyah (sg. maalikiyy) مالكية (مالكي)

Malikites

See "maalikiyy".

maani' مانع

preventing cause, obstacle

Something that makes

another disallowed, such as the state of ritual impurity which prevents a Muslim from praying or touching the Qur'an.

maani‘ (al--) المانع

The Protector or Withholder

A Divine Attribute of Allah. The One Who protects His servants, or Who withholds what He wills.

maa shaa' allaah ما شاء الله

Allah bless!

Literally, this means "What Allah has willed". It is usually used to express admiration of something, while indicating the real Causer of this, Allah. It is a good practice to say this expression every time we like something.

mabruur مبرور

perfect, well performed

The term is usually used with "Hajj" to mean pilgrimage which a person performed very well, by avoiding all the actions that nullify or invalidate it, for example.

madd مد

elongation

Lengthening of a vowel. There are different types of elongation mentioned in the books of tajweed: "'aSlii, far‘ii, jaa'iz, laazim, Harfii, kalimii" (See these terms).

madd 'aSliyy مد أصلي

intrinsic elongation

The normal elongation of a long vowel. It is considered equivalent to two short vowel lengths. For example, the vowel in Arabic "laan" (He became soft) is twice as long as the vowel in "lan" (will not).

madd ‘aariD lis-sukuun مد عارض للسكون

elongation occasioned by finality

Extra elongation of a long vowel when it comes before a word final consonant. If the

said consonant is vocalized (followed by a vowel), then there is no extra elongation. For example, "raHiim" makes it possible to elongate the /ii/ twice or three times ("raHiiiiiim"), but if we say "raHiimun" the /ii/ should not be elongated more than usual.

madd al-farq مد الفرق

discrimination elongation

The extra elongation of a long vowel in a word initial position in order to distinguish the word in an interrogative mode from the word in a declarative mode, such as "'aaaaaal'aana?" (Now?) as opposed to "'aal'aana" (Now).

madd al-liin مد اللين

elongation of a glide

The two glides /w/ and /y/ are made long when they occur before a word final consonant, such as "khawf" (fear) and "bayt" (house) if we stop on these words. So the above words may be pronounced "khawwwwwf" and "bayyyyyyt".

madd aS-Silah مد الصلة

liaison elongation

Extra elongation of a vowel after the pronominal suffix -hi/u (him) if the /h/ is preceded by a vowel and the pronoun is followed by any word. Unless the following word begins with a glottal stop ("hamzah"), the vowel of -hi and -hu is made twice as long, such as "'inda-**hu** 'ilmun" which is pronounced "'inda-**huu** 'ilmun". If the followiing word begins with a glottal stop, then this same vowel is made four or five times longer.

madd at-tamyiiz مد التميز

distinguishing elongation

See "madd al-farq".

madd far'iiyy مد فرعي

incidental elongation

The extra elongation of a vowel due to some linguistic

factors, such as occurrence before a glottal stop, as in "maa'" (water) which is pronounced maaaaa': (with a fairly long vowel).

madd Harfiyy مد حرفي

letter elongation

The extra elongation of a long vowel in the name of a letter, which is found at the beginning of a "suurah" of the Qur'an, such as "SaaD" (the 14th letter in the Arabic alphabet) which should be pronounced "SaaaaaaD", because the vowel is followed by a word final /d/.

madd Harfiyy mukhaffaf

مد حرفي مخفف

light letter elongation

The extra elongation of a long vowel in the name of a letter, which is found at the beginning of a "suurah" of the Qur'an, such as "SaaD" (the 14th letter in the Arabic alphabet) which should be pronounced "SaaaaaaD", because the double vowel is followed by a word final /d/. The above example is also called 'light', because the vowel is not followed by a geminate consonant.

madd Harfiyy muthaqqal

مد حرفي مثقل

heavy letter elongation

This type is called Harfiyy (related to a letter / sound) because it occurs with the letters / sounds whose names are pronounced in the "muqaTTa'aat" (disjoined letters) that occur at the beginning of some chapters in the Qur'an , such ALM (pronounced 'alif- laaaaaaam-miiiiiim). In this example, we find that /aa/ in the middle is followed by /m/ with double value. Since the /m/ is geminated, we say that it is 'heavy', and the elongation is called heavy.

madd jaa'iz مد جائز

optional elongation

The optional extra elongation of a long vowel, when it is word final and the following word begins with the glottal stop ("hamzah"), as in "qaa**luu** 'innaa". In such a case, the /uu/ can be pronounced with extra elongation (/uuuu[u]/) or at normal length /uu/.

madd jaa'iz munfaSil

مد جائز منفصل

optional separated elongation

See "madd jaa'iz" for an example. It is called "munfaSil" (separated) because the long vowel is in a word while the glottal stop ("hamzah") is in another (following) word.

madd kalimiyy مد كلمي

word elongation

The extra elongation of a long vowel which, affecting the pronunciation of a word, such as "daabbah" (animal) which should be read as "daaaaaabbah" because the long vowel /aa/ is followed by a double consonant.

madd

madd kalimiyy muthaqqal

مد كلمي مثقل

heavy word elongation

This is called 'heavy' because it occurs before a geminate consonant, and 'word' because it occurs in words, such as the /aa/ in "daabbah" (animal), which is pronounced obligatorily with extra elongation due to its occurrence before the double 'b' letter /sound. So the above word is pronounced in the Qur'an with six vowel length, "daaaaaabbah".

madd laazim مد لازم

required elongation

An obligatory type of extra elongation of a vowel. This includes the two "madd kalimiyy" and two "madd

Harfiyy" mentioned in their places in this dictionary.

madd Tabii'iyy مد طبيعي

normal elongation

It is two short vowel length, as in "yakuunu" where the first /u/ is twice as long as the second /u/ in the word. (See "madd 'aSliyy").

madd waajib muttaSil

مد واجب متصل

obligatory, connected elongation

Extra elongation of the vowel which precedes a glottal stop ("hamzah") in the same word, such as "maa'" (water) and "suu'" (something bad). In Qur'anic recitation, the vowels should be made extra long (4 or 5 times the length of a short vowel); the above words become "maaaaa'" and "suuuuu'".

madhhab (pl. madhaahib)

مذهب (مذاهب)

school of thought

A school of thought, usually in matters of Islamic law. There are four major schools of thought recognized by Sunni Muslims: Hanafi, Malki, Shaf'i and Hanbali.

ma'dhuun مأذون

justice of the peace; registrar

This refers to a man who has been authorized to perform religious weddings.

ma'dhuur معذور

excused, excusable

madhy مذي

arousal genital fluid

Fluid that comes out of the penis upon a male's being sexually aroused. It is considered ritually impure, and should be removed by washing. It also invalidates the ablution.

maDmaDah مضمضة

rinsing the mouth

Rinsing the mouth, preferably with tooth brushing, usually during the "wuDuu'".

maghrib (al--) المغرب

sunset

Technically, "maghrib" means the time between actual sunset and the disappearance of the evening dusk.

maHiiD محيض

menstruation

State of menstruation.

mahr (pl. muhuur) مهر (مهور)

dower

See "Sadaaq".

mahr al-mithl مهر المثل

normal dower

The dower given to women of a similar social status.

maHram (pl. maHaarim) محرم (محارم)

unmaritable relation

A relative who cannot be married to a female, such as a father, brother, uncle, etc., as opposed to "ajnabiyy" (stranger).

maHZuur (pl. maHZuuraat) محظور (محظورات)

forbidden act

An act forbidden, especially due to certain circumstances, such as wearing sewn garments for a male in the state of "iHraam" during pilgrimage.

majiid (al--) المجيد

The Ever-Glorious

A Divine Attribute of Allah. The One Who is glorified and honoured the most.

majilis (pl. majaalis) adh-dhikr مجلس (مجالس) الذكر

meeting of remembrance

A group of people sitting together to remember Allah in different ways, such as studying the Qur'an.

majuusiyy (pl. majuus)

مجوسي (مجوس)

Magian

An adherent of Mazdaism, worshipper of fire.

majuusiyyah (al--) المجوسية

Magianism

The Persian religion of fire worship.

makaarim al-'akhlaaq

مكارم الأخلاق

good morals, good conduct

In the hadeeth, the Prophet (PBUH) says: "I have been sent to perfect good morals and conduct."

makhiiT مخيط

sewn garment

Any piece of garment that is sewn (shirt, trousers…), as opposed to a seamless sheet of cloth. A male pilgrim should not wear such a garment during pilgrimage.

makruuh (pl. makruuhaat)

مكروه (مكروهات)

reprehensible, hateful (act)

An act that is considered reprehensible or hateful, though not forbidden by the religion, such as many distasteful actions.

malaa'ikah (sg. malak)

ملائكة (ملك)

angels

See "malak".

malak (pl. malaa'ikah)

ملك (ملائكة)

angel

A Muslim believes that these are pure creatures, created of light, who never disobey Allah. Many of them are assigned specific jobs, such as recording the good and bad deeds of people or guarding Paradise or Hell…etc. The best known among them are Gabriel, Michael, "israafiil", and "'izraa'iil" (the Angel of Death).

Malak al-mawt ملك الموت

Angel of Death

"“izraa'iil” is believed to be the name of the Angel of Death who is assigned to take away people’s souls from them, causing their death.

malakuut ملكوت

kingdom

As a religious term this refers to the Kingdom (of both Heaven and Earth) which belong to Allah Alone. A common expression is "maalik al-mulk wa al-malkuut" (The possessor of the Sovereignty and the Kingdom).

malik (al--) الملك

The King

A Divine Attribute of Allah. The Absolute Ruler of the universe.

mal'uun ملعون

cursed, damned

Someone who is being dismissed from or deprived of Divine mercy.

ma'muum مأموم

follower

A person who follows the leader in congregational prayer.

manaasik (sg. mansak) مناسك (منسك)

rituals

See “mansak”.

manduubiyyah مندوبية

plausability

See “manduub”.

manhduub (pl. manduubaat) مندوب (مندوبات)

plausible recommended act

An act that is considered plausible or recommended, but neither required nor reguarly observed by the Prophet (PBUH).

maniyy مني

semen

mansuukh منسوخ

abrogated

A decree or commandment that has been abrogated by another more recent one or modified by it.

maqaam (al--) al-maHmuud

المقام المحمود

the honoured status

The special status given by Allah to one person only on the Day of Judgement. All indications point to the fact that this would be the Prophet Muhammad (PBUH). Many scholars say that the reference in the Qur'an (17: 79) is to the "Greatest Intercession" or "ash-shafaa'ah al-kubraa".

maqaam ibraahiim

مقام إبراهيم

Maqam Ibrahim

The standing post of Abraham is a rock believed to have been used by the Prophet Abraham to stand on during the building of the Ka'bah. It is now encased in a crystal housing, near the Ka'bah.The area adjacent to it is also called "maqaam ibraahiim", and a Muslim would normally pray two "rak'ahs" in the area after the "Tawaaf".

ma'ruuf معروف

kindness, good deed

A good, common practice, including kindness and other good deeds.

maSaadir at-tashrii'

مصادر التشريع

sources of Islamic law

The sources upon which the "sharii'ah" is based. Four main sources are recognized: the Qur'an, the sunnah, analogy and consensus of Muslim scholars.

maSaaliH mursalah

مصالح مرسلة

general good

The term has been defined as "public welfare neither

commanded nor prohibited in any source of Islamic law."

masaHa (yamsaH)

مسح (يمسح)

to wipe

To wipe something with a wet hand.

masbuuq (al--) fii aS-Salaah

المسبوق في الصلاة

preceded in prayer

The person who missed part of the congregational prayer.

masH 'alaa al-khuffayn

مسح على الخفين

wiping over footwear

Wiping over a shoe or a heavy stocking. It is permissible for a Muslim who wears a footwear, before making ablution, to wipe its upper part with wet hands instead of washing the feet, for 24 hours as long as he does not remove it. If he is on travel, he may do so for three days.

Mash'ar (al--) al-Haraam

المشعر الحرام

sacred site

A place in Muzdalifah, near Makkah, where pilgrims are supposed to stop during the night preceding the tenth of Dhul-Hijjah and say prayers. (See the Qur'an, 2: 298).

mashruu' مشروع

permissible, legitimate

Something allowed by the religion.

mashruu'iyyah مشروعية

legality, lawfulness

The state of something being legal or permissible.

masiih (al--) المسيح

the Messiah

Unless specified, this term refers to Jesus son of Mary.

masiiH (al--) 'iisaa ibn maryam المسيح عيسى بن مريم

Jesus son of Mary

Literally, the Messiah Jesus son of Mary.

MasiiH (al--) ad-dajjaal

المسيح الدجال

Antichrist, false messiah

In the traditions of the Prophet (PBUH) there are references to a false messiah who comes in the latter days of this world and pretends to be the true messiah, or even as God, in order to mislead people into disbelief.

masiiHiyy **مسيحي**

Christian

A relatively new word for the Islamic word “naSraaniyy”.

masiiHiyyah (al--) **المسيحية**

Christianity

This is a modern synonym for “naSraaniyyah”.

ma‘Siyah (pl. ma‘aaSii)

معصية (معاصي)

sin

Literally, an act of disobedience to Allah.

masjid (al--) al-aqSaa

المسجد الأقصى

The Furthest Mosque

The main mosque of Jerusalem, built on the site to which the Prophet Muhammad (PBUH) went in his night journey (“al-israa”) and from where the Prophet (PBUH) ascended to heaven. (See the Qur'an, 17: 1).

masjid (al--) al-Haraam

المسجد الحرام

the Holy Mosque

The mosque that encloses the Ka‘bah at Makkah.

masjid al-khayf **مسجد الخيف**

al-Khayf Mosque

The mosque at Mina.

masjid (al--) an-nabawiyy

المسجد النبوي

the Prophet's Mosque

The mosque at Medina, which was first built by the Prophet Muhammad (PBUH) and where he is buried.

masjid Diraar مسجد ضرار

mosque of harm

The mosque that was built by the hypocrites in Medina, during the early days of the Prophet in that town, in order to detract the worshippers from joining the Prophet in their prayers. (See the Qur'an 9: 107)

masjid namirah مسجد نمرة

Namirah Mosque

The mosque at 'Arafah, where the pilgrims perform both noon and afternoon prayers together on the ninth day of Dhul-Hijjah.

masjid qubaa' مسجد قباء

the Mosque of Qubaa'

The name of the first mosque ever built in Islamic history, since the Prophet (PBUH), upon his arrival at Medina, first stayed at Qubaa', then moved to Medina proper. (See the Qur'an, 9: 108).

masnuun (pl. masnuunaat) مسنون (مسنونات)

sunnah practice

Practice observed and/or recommended by the Prophet Muhammad (PBUH).

mass (min al-jinn / ash-shyTaan) مس من الجن / الشيطان

possession (by Satan or a jinni)

The state of being controlled by an evil spirit or jinn.

ma'Suum معصوم

infallible

A person, usually a prophet, protected by Allah from committing wrong acts or sins.

mataa' al-Hayaat ad-dunyaa متاع الحياة الدنيا

worldly pleasures

The reference is to the temporary pleasures of this life, as opposed to the eternal pleasures of the Hereafter.

maTaaf (al--) المطاف

circumambulation path

The path which is followed by the person that circumambulates (walks around) the Ka'bah.

ma'thuur مأثور

reported

This word means something (prayer or saying, for example) that was reported from the past, generally accepted by Muslims. (See 'athar).

matiin (al--) المتين

The Ever Strong

A Divine Attribute of Allah. The One Whose strength has no limits.

matn al-Hadiith متن الحديث

hadeeth text

The main text of the tradition of the Prophet Muhammad (PBUH), giving his words, for example.

maw'iZah (pl. mawaa'iZ) موعظة (مواعظ)

sermon

A general term used for any type of a talk giving religious advice.

mawaaqiit (sg. miiqaat) مواقيت (ميقات)

appointed times or places

See "miiqaat".

mawDuu' موضوع

forgery

The term refers to a hadeeth fabricated by someone and falsely ascribed to the Prophet (PBUH).

mawlaa [1] (pl. mawaalii) مولى [1] (موالي)

lord, master, protector

In the Qur'an we often find the word in these senses referring to Allah.

mawlaa [2] (pl. mawaalii)

مولى 2 (موالي)

charge, client

In early Islamic writings we find this word to mean someone (often, an ex-slave) who is under another person's patronage (often, former master).

mawlaa [3] (pl. mawaalii)

مولى 3 (موالي)

paternal relatives

According to some scholars, the term "mawaalii" found in Chapters 4 (verse 33) and 19 (verse 5) of the Qur'an refers to the paternal kinsfolk, technically called "'aSabah" in the laws of inheritance.

mawlid (al--) an-nabawiyy

المولد النبوي

The Prophet's birthday

The birthday of the Prophet Muhammad (PBUH) is assumed to be most probably on Monday the 12th of Rabi' al- Awwal. It was in the year 570 AD.

mawaqi'ah (pl. mawaaqi')

موقعة (مواقع)

battle

In Islamic history, the term is used to refer to all battles, both during the days of the Prophet Muhammad (PBUH) and at other times.

mawquudhah موقوذة

dead through beating

An animal whose meat is normally edible, but dies as a result of beating; hence, its meat becomes forbidden for a Muslim to eat, due to the fact that it is not properly slaughtered. (See the Qur'an, 5: 3).

maysir ميسر

gambling, game of chance

Gambling is forbidden by Islam. (See the Qur'an, 5: 90-91).

maytah ميتة

carrion

The meat of the animal that dies a natural death. Such meat is forbidden for a Muslim to eat even if it is edible when the animal is properly slaughtered.

mazaamiir daawuud

مزامير داود

Psalms of David

The book that was revealed to Prophet David (PBUH).

maZlamah (pl. maZaalim)

مظلمة (مظالم)

complaint

Complaint usually made to the regular authorities or higher authorities in some cases.

miHraab (pl. maHaariib)

محراب (محاريب)

prayer nitch

An enclave made in a worship place, usually in the front.

miikaa'iil ميكائيل

Michael

The angel who is in charge of dispensing the provisions decreed by Allah for different creatures. The name is given as "miikaal" too, in the Qur'an.

miil ميل

Islamic mile

It is said that the Islamic mile is equivalent to 1848 meters.

miiqaat (pl. mawaaqiit)

ميقات (مواقيت)

appointed time or place

For the pilgrims, "miiqaat" usually means the place where they should wear the "iHraam" (pilgrim's garb) and make the intention for "Hajj" or "'umrah".

miithaaq (pl. mawaathiiq)

ميثاق (مواثيق)

covenant, pledge

Fulfilling the covenant (not breaking it) is considered an

important quality in believers. (See the Qur'an 13:20, e.g.)

mikHalah (pl. makaaHil) مكحلة (مكاحل)

kohl container

A small container in which "kohl" (antimony powder) is placed.

millah (pl. milal) ملة (ملل)

religion

The term is sometimes contrasted with "niHlah" (a sect or school of thought).

minaa منى

Mina

The valley next to Makkah where pilgrims stay the eighth and the tenth through the thirteenth days of the month of pilgrimage, Dhul Hijjah.

minaarah منارة

minaret

The tower in a mosque from which the "adhaan" (call to prayer) was made by the muezzin. Nowadays, loud speakers are put there while the call is actually made inside the mosque itself in front of a microphone.

minbar (pl. manaabir) منبر (منابر)

pulpit

A pulpit or speaking forum, from where a speech or sermon is delivered.

minsak (pl. manaasik) منسك (مناسك)

pilgrimage rite

A rite or ritual observed when one performs pilgrimage to Makkah.

miqdaar al-madd مقدار المد

duration of a vowel

Literally, the duration of the elongation. Normally, a typical elongation is two short vowel length. A vowel, however, may be four, five or six times long in certain contexts, such as in the case

of the vowel being followed by a "hamzah" (glottal stop).

mi'raaj (al--) المعراج

The Ascension

The ascension of the Prophet Muhammad (PBUH) from Jerusalem to the seven Heavens on the night of the 27th of Rajab.

mirwad (p. maraawid)

مرود (مراود)

kohl stick

A thin cylindrical metallic stick which is dipped in the "kohl" (antimony powder) by inserting the stick inside the container of the kohl. It is then used for putting the kohl inside the eyes or for eye lining.

misbaHah مسبحة

prayer beads

Beads strung together in specific numbers, usually 33 or 99, and are used to count how many times one has said a certain prayer, such as "subHaana allaah" (Glory be to Allah'), "al-Hamdu li-llaah" (Thank Allah) and "allaahu 'akbar" (Allah is the Greatest).

miswaak (pl. masawwiik)

مسواك (مساويك)

tooth brush

The original tooth brush used by the Prophet Muhammad (PBUH) more than 1400 years ago, and is still being used by some Muslims, is a tooth brush in the form of a stick taken from a tree known in Arabia as "al-araak", which has medicinal value and a good smell.

mithqaal (pl. mathaaqiil) [1]

مثقال [1] (مثاقيل)

mithkal

It is said to be, "the weight of a dinar, the equivalent of 72 grains of barley (equals 4.4 grams). It may be somewhat less or more."

mithqaal (pl. mathaaqiil) 2
مثقال 2 (مثاقيل)

weight

This is the literal sense of the word, and it is used in this sense in the Qur'an (e.g., 99 : 7-8).

mu‘aahad معاهد

protected

Literally, the word means someone we have made a solemn promise. Technically, it refers to the people of the Scripture who have been promised protection by the Muslim State. It is similar to the word “dhimmiyy”.

mu'adhdhin مؤذن

muezzin

The person who calls “adhaan” (call to prayer) to inform people that the time for a certain “Salaah” has come.

mu'akhkhar aS-Sadaaq
مؤخر الصداق

deferred dower

Often, a part of the dower paid by the groom to his wife is deferred, to be paid upon separation or at the request of the wife.

mu'akhkhir (al--) المؤخر

The Supreme Retarder

A Divine Attribute of Allah. The One Who delays things and postpones affairs at His Will.

mu'allafah (al--) quluubuhum
المؤلفة قلوبهم

newly won friends

One of the definitions of this term says that they are a group of people whose hearts the Muslim community tries to win to encourage them to accept Islam and show loyalty to it.

mu'allaqah معلقة

suspended

A wife in a state of indetermination. She is not treated like a wife, nor is she divorced.

mu'awwadhataan (al--) المعوذتان

Chapters 113 and 114 of the Holy Qur'an

The two chapters of the Qur'an which begin with the words "qul A"uudhu" (Say: I seek refuge...), which are recommended by the Prophet (PBUH) to be recited for protection from various types and sources of evil.

mubaaH (pl. mubaaHaat) مباح (مباحات)

permissible (act)

Something permitted by the religion, or not forbidden by it. The generalrule is that things are permissible unless they are explicitly or implicitly forbidden in the Qur'an or sunnah of the Prophet (PBUH).

Mubaahalah مباهلة

mutual supplication

This word comes from the verb "'ibtahal" (to supplicate or pray to Allah). The term refers to the incident in which Allah ordered His Prophet Muhammad (PBUH) to challenge some leading Christian figures of his time regarding their view of Allah versus the Islamic view. In this verse the Prophet was to challenge those Christians by both praying to Allah to curse the liar. (See the Qur'an, 3:61).

mubaarak مبارك

blessed

Someone or something that has received Divine blessing; therefore, could be a source of blessing.This word is used in congratulating others, such as "zawaaj mubarak" (blessed wedding), "'iid mubaarak"

(blessed Eid), "shahr mubaarak" (blessed month). A related (colloquial) word is "mabruuk" which has the same meaning, though slightly different in use.

mubaasharah مباشرة

enjoyment by physical contact

This refers to a man enjoying his wife's body through physical contact other than sexual intercourse. The practice is resorted to, for example, during her menstruation.

mubdi' (al--) المبدىء

The Commencer

A Divine Attribute of Allah. The One Who initiated the creation of everything from nothing.

mubtadi‘ مبتدع

innovator

Someone who introduces practices not approved by the religion, and considers them part of the faith.

mubTil (pl. mubTilaat) مبطل (مبطلات)

nullifier

Something that nullifies or invalidates an act of worship or the like, such as bleeding which nullifies one's ablution, making it necessary for the person to do the ablution again in order to pray, or laughing aloud while praying, which nullifies one's prayer, making it necessary to do it again.

muDaarabah مضاربة

silent partnership

Partnership of two people, one with the capital and the other with labour. Profits are divided between them.

mudd مد

mudd

A dry measure for grains, roughly equivalent to the amount that fills the two hands cupped together (appr. 1.032 litres).

mudhill (al--) المذل

The Supreme Humiliator

A Divine Attribute of Allah. The One Who brings humiliation to His enemies and the enemies of truth, with degradation in this life and punishment in the Hereafter.

mufaaraqah fiS-Salaah مفارقة في الصلاة

independence in prayer

Acting independently from the leader in a congregational prayer, under certain conditions.

mufaSSalaat (al--) / al-mufaSSal المفصلات / المفصل

shorter chapters

Literally, this means the 'detailed ones'. The reference is to chapters of the Qur'an from suurat Qaaf (chapter 49) to the end of the Qur'an (chapter 114).

mufassir مفسر

interpreter, exegete

The person who interprets the Qur'an and explains its meanings, according to the rules and conditions stipulated for the task.

mufliH مفلح

successful, prosperous

This word is used in the Qur'an in the plural form ("mufliHuun") to describe the believers (the Qur'an, 2: 5). It is also a promise from Allah that they are the ones who will achieve success and salvation as well as spiritual prosperity.

muftii مفتي

mufti

Expounder of the law, or a religious authority officially assigned the job of expounding the laws of Islam and giving official opinion on various religious and legal matters.

mufTir مفطر

not fasting

This refers to someone who is not observing the fast for whatever reason. It is the opposite of "Saa'im".

mughallaZah (yamiin / 'aymaan--) مغلظة (يمين / أيمان)

very emphatic oath(s)

Swearing, for example, to Allah and many of His Attributes to emphasize or confirm something.

mughnii (al--) المغني

The Supreme Enricher

A Divine Attribute of Allah. The One Who makes others self- sufficient.

muhaajir (pl. muhaajiruun) مهاجر (مهاجرون)

immigrant

Someone who migrates from a place (usually of disbelievers) to a place (of believers). The term "muhaajiruun" (immigrants) usually refers in Islamic history to the early followers of Islam who migrated from Makkah to Medina.

muHaasabat an-nafs محاسبة النفس

examination of conscience

Evaluating one's actions and deeds to himself, in the light of the teachings of the religion.

muHaddith محدث

hadeeth teacher

A scholar who teaches prophetic traditions.

muHallil محلل

legalizer

Somebody who does something to make legal an illegal act. The typical example is when a man marries an irrevocably divorced woman so that after divorcing her she may get remarried to her first husband.

muHarram [1] محرم [1]

forbidden

Something forbidden by the religion.

muHarram [2] محرم 2

sanctified, sacred

It is also the name of the first month of the Islamic calendar. The correct name is "al-muHarram" (the sacred).

muHarram [3] (pl. muHarramaat) محرم 3 (محرمات)

forbidden act, thing

Something forbidden by the Qur'an or the Prophet Muhammad (PBUH).

muhaymin (al--) المهيمن

The Supreme Controller

A Divine Attribute of Allah. The One Who controls all things in the universe and watches over them.

muHdith [1] محدث 1

ritually impure / unclean

Someone who has done something that makes him ritually impure or unclean. (See "Hadath 'akbar" and "Hadath 'aSghar").

muHdith [2] محدث 2

innovator

A person who introduces innovations into the religion.

muHkam (muHkamaat) محكم (محكمات)

exact in meaning

Usually, this word is used in contrast to "mutashaabih" (see word). It means tight. With reference to Qur'anic verses, the word refers to the verse(s) which have exact meanings. (See the Qur'an, 3:7).

MuHrim محرم

wearer of iHraam

A pilgrim wearing the pilgrimage garb, "iHraam".

MuHSan محصن

married man

A man previously married.

muHSanah [1] محصنة 1

married woman

In the Qur'an, the term is used to refer to a married, free or

virtuous woman (the Qur'an, 4: 24-25).

muHSanah 2 محصنة 2

chaste / virtuous woman

This is one of the three main senses of the word found in the Qur'an and Islamic writings. (See the Qur'an, 4: 24-25).

muHSanah 3 محصنة 3

free female

This is one of the three main senses of the word found in the Qur'an and Islamic writings. (The Qur'an 4: 24-25).

muHSii (al--) المحصي

The Numberer

A Divine Attribute of Allah. The One Who keeps record or takes account of everything.

muHtaDar محتضر

dying person

A person on his death bed. Usually, we should try to prompt him to say "ash-shahaadataan" so that they would be his last words.

muHtasib 1 محتسب 1

not expecting reward

Someone who does not wait for rewards from people, but does things for the sake of Allah alone.

muHtasib 2 مُحتسب 2

market inspector

Someone appointed by the state to make sure that merchants and tradesmen are honest in their dealings.

muHyii (al--) المُحْيِي

The Quickener, Giver of life

A Divine Attribute of Allah. The One Who gives life.

mu'iid (al--) المُعِيد

The Supreme Restorer

A Divine Attribute of Allah. The One Who returns the living to their former existence and gives life to the dead.

mu'izz (al--) المُعِـز

The Supreme Honourer

A Divine Attribute of Allah. The One Who gives honour and esteem to His servants.

mujaahid مُجاهد

fighter for the Cause of Allah

Someone who fights for the Cause of Allah.

mujaahir مُجاهر

bold sinner

A sinner who does sinful acts publicly or announces them, without a sense of shame.

mujiib (al--) المجيب

The Supreme Answerer

A Divine Attribute of Allah. The One Who answers the prayers and calls of His servants.

mu'jiz مُعجز

miraculous

Clearly superhuman and extraordinary, such as the Qur'an's content, language and style.

mu'jizah مُعجزة

miracle

Something supernatural performed by a prophet, for example, such as the changing of the rod into a snake by the Prophet Moses (PBUH).

mujtahid مُجتهد

independent legist

A legist formulating independent decisions in legal or theological matters, based on the interpretation and application of the main principles of derivation of Islamic law.

mukhaal'ah مخالعة

seeking divorce

The woman seeking divorce from her husband, often by compensating him, for example, for the expenses he had incurred. Another term is "khul'".

mu'kil ar-ribaa مؤكل الربا

feeder of usury

The person who borrows money with interest / usury is conisdered a culprit in the crime of usury; therefore, he is called the feeder of usury.

mulaa'anah ملاعنة

mutual cursing

A procedure in which a husband who accuses his wife of adultery, without having witnesses, swears four times to Allah that he is telling the truth, and fifth time that he deserves Allah's wrath if he is telling a lie. The wife then may, if she claims innocence, swear four times that he is telling a lie, and the fifth time that she deserves Allah's wrath if he is not telling the truth. (See the Qur'an, 24: 6-9).

mulHid (pl. malaaHidah) ملحد (ملاحدة)

atheist

A person who does not believe in the existence of Allah.

multazam (al--) الملتزم

The Multazam

The area adjacent to the portal of the Ka'bah (between the black stone and the portal).

multazim (pl. multazimuun) ملتزم (ملتزمون)

conservative / committed person

This is a fairly recently coined term, meaning someone who tries to meticulously observe the teachings of Islam.

mumiit (al--) المميت

The Supreme Death-Causer

A Divine Attribute of Allah. The One Who actually controls life and death.

mu'min (al--) المؤمن

The Source of Security

A Divine Attribute of Allah. The One Who provides His righteous servants with security and safety from Hell Fire, and provides all His creation with security from injustice to them.

mu'min (pl. mu'minuun) مؤمن

believer

In Islamic terms, this means someone who believes in Islam with firm conviction.

munaafiq (pl. munaafiquun) منافق (منافقون)

hypocrite

Someone who pretends to be a believer, while he is not, in order to deceive others.

munaajaah مناجاة

intimate talk

Usually the word is used for the pious person's talking (praying) to God in a fervent manner in a state of solitude.

munajjim منجم

astrologer

Islam teaches its followers not to resort to astrologers nor believe what they say.

munfiq منفق

spender

As a term this usually refers to someone who spends money for the sake of God.

munkar (pl. munkaraat) منكر (منكرات)

abominable act, evil

Anything that is forbidden by Islam may be considered "munkar", and it is a Muslim's duty to fight or correct it.

munkar wa nakiir منكر و نكير

Munkar and Nakeer

The two angels assigned to interrogate the dead in their graves upon their burial.

muntaqim (al--) المنتقم

The Supreme Avenger

A Divine Attribute of Allah.

The One Who punishes the persistent wrong doers or sinners.

muqaaDaah مقاضاة

suing

Taking someone to court.

muqaayaDah مقايضة

bartering

Giving something and receiving another for it at the same time.

muqaddim (al--) المقدم

The Supreme Advancer

A Divine Attribute of Allah. The One Who advances and brings people and things nearer to each other.

muqaTTa'aat (al--) المقطعات

disconnected letters

These are the letters that are found at the beginning of some chapters of the Qur'an, such as ALM (alif-laam-miim) and YS (yaa'- siin). They are called disconnected because we read the letter (their names) separately, rather than treat the combinations as single words.

muqiit (al--) المقيت

The Supreme Nourisher

A Divine Attribute of Allah. The One Who provides nourishment, or Who is in control of everything.

muqsiT (al--) المقسط

The Supreme Equitable

A Divine Attribute of Allah. The One Who is never unjust or unfair.

muqtadii مقتدي

follower

A person who follows a certain "imaam" or school of thought.

muqtadir (al--) المقتدر

The Most Efficient

A Divine Attribute of Allah. The One Who has total command over His creation.

muraabaHah مرابحة

profit sharing

Technically, this term is used short "bay' al-muraabaHa", which means a transaction in which one party sells something to another indicating the amount of profit he is making in the sale. Nowadays, this is applied to installment sales, where the buyer pays an extra amount of money or percentage of the sale price for the installments.

muraabiT مرابط

Muslim frontier guard

The person who is posted at the borders of Muslim lands to protect them from the enemy.

muraaqabat an-nafs

مراقبة النفس

self monitoring, watching

Watching oneself in order to prevent it from doing wrong things.

murDi'ah (pl. murDi'aat)

مرضعة (مرضعات)

wet nurse

A woman who breast feeds a baby other than her own.

muriid مريد

sufi disciple

A person who is under training as a Sufi.

murtadd مرتد

apostate

A Muslim who leaves the fold of Islam.

murtashii (al--) المرتشي

seeker of a bribe

Someone who asks for bribery. Both the seeker and the giver ("raashii") are sinners. So is the mediator ("raa'ish"), if there is any.

musaafir مسافر

traveller

A person is considered 'on travel', technically, if he is about 80 kilometers away from his normal place of residence.

musaakanah مساكنة

sharing a dwelling

It could be same house or room.

musaaqaah مساقاة

watering partnership

This is the arrangement in which the farm owner makes a deal with someone to take care of the plants, and they share the produce or crops.

muSallaa مُصلّى

prayer place

Any place designated for "Salaah", including a small area (for a limited number of people) or a big area for masses (such as an open space for Eid prayers).

muSawwir (al--) المصور

The Supreme Fashioner

A Divine Attribute of Allah. The One Who fashions or gives perfect shape to His creation.

mushabbihah مشبهة

assimilators

Misguided Muslims who draw resemblances between Allah and His creatures, which is a clear contradiction to the Qur'anic statement: "Nothing is similar unto Him." (the Qur'an 42:11)

muSHaf (al--) المصحف

written text of the Qur'an

The written / printed text of the Qur'an.

muSHaf (al--) al-'uthmaaniyy المصحف العثماني

Othman's copy of the Qur'an

The standard copy of the Qur'an which was compiled upon instructions from the third Righteous Caliph in order to protect Muslims from fighting among themselves regarding their modes of recitation of the Qur'an and the order of the chapters.

muSHaf (al--) al-'imam

المصحف الإمام

The standerd copy of the Qur'an

The copy of the Qur'an compiled at instructions by the Caliph Othman, whose rules of dictation are observed in other copies printed up to the present time.

mushrik مشرك

polytheist, pagan

A person who worships more than one god, or associates partners with Allah.

muskir (pl. muskiraat)

مسكر (مسكرات)

intoxicant

Anything that causes intoxication to a person. Alcoholic beverages and drugs are typical examples.

musnad 1 مسند 1

traceable to the Prophet Muhammad (PBUH)

A tradition or text traceable to the Prophet Muhammad (PBUH).

musnad 2 مسند 2

book of hadeeth

A book of hadeeths collected by one person, such as "musnad al-'imaam aHmad ibn Hanbal" (The book of hadeeths compiled by ibn Hanbal).

musta'min مستأمن

security seeker

A member of an un-Islamic hostile area who enters a Muslim territory and claims safe conduct and immunity from hostilities. If the Muslim state agrees, then he becomes a "musta'man" and receives the promised treatment.

mustaHaaDah مستحاضة

female with false menses

A female that has vaginal bleeding other than her regular period.

mustaHabb
(pl. mustaHabbaat)
مستحب (مستحبات)

recommended act
An act recommended by Islam, not required nor regularly observed by the Prophet (PBUH).

muSTalaH al-Hadiith
مصطلح الحديث

science of hadeeth
This term, which literally means "terminology of the hadeeth", is used to refer to the science of hadeeth text criticism and evaluation. It is the method of ascertaining the authenticity of the traditions ascribed to the Prophet Muhammad (PBUH).

muta'aalii (al--) المتعالي

The Supremely Exalted
A Divine Attribute of Allah. The One Who is above any reproach.

mu'taddah معتدة

woman in waiting period
A woman in a waiting period, after her divorce or death of a husband.

mutakabbir (al--) المتكبر

The Supremely Proud
A Divine Attribute of Allah. The One Who is above every type of deficiency or imperfection.

mu'takif معتكف

in a state of "i'tikaaf"
A person who retreats in the mosque for devotions.

mutamatti' متمتع

enjoying pilgrim
A pilgrim who makes "'umrah" and wears his regular clothes to live a normal life until the eighth day of the month of pilgrimage, when he wears the "iHraam" again for the "Hajj".

mu'tamir معتمر

performer of " 'umrah"
Someone who performs the lesser pilgrimage.

mutaraddiyah مترديه

dead from a fall
An animal whose flesh is edible, but dies from a fall; hence, it is not slaughtered. It is forbidden for a Muslim to eat its meat. (See the Qur'an, 5: 3).

mutaSawwif متصوف

Sufi
A follower of a Sufi order, or simply someone who is living a simple way of life full of devotions.

mutashaabih (mutashaabihaat)
متشابه (متشابهات)

polysemous, with many meanings
The word is used to refer to verse(s) of the Qur'an which have more than one possible interpretation or application. (See the Qur'an, 3: 7).

mutawaatir متواتر

of good chain (of narrators)
A hadeeth is considered "mutawaatir" if it has a good chain of narrators: continuous, many sources, high reliability.

mu'tazilah (al--) المعتزلة

Mu'tazilites
A sect of Muslims who called to the imposition of human rationalization on theological issues, such as predestination, Divine attributes, the Qur'an, etc. Their views often contradicted those of Islamic orthodoxy.

mu'Tii (al--) المعطي

The Supreme Giver
A Divine Attribute of Allah.The One Who gives with no bounds or limits.

muttafaq 'alayh متفق عليه

agreed upon
This refers to a "Hadiith" that has been reported by both al-Bukhari and Muslim; hence,

agreed upon or approved by them both. This would make the hadeeth text attain the highest degree of authenticity and reliability.

muttaq(in) (pl. muttaquun)

متق (متقون)

Allah-fearing, pious

Someone who remembers that Allah is watching him all the time; therefore, he conducts himself in the best manner that pleases Allah. He is also someone who fears Divine punishment, and seeks to protect himself from it.

muubiqaat (al--) (sg. muubiqah) الموبقات (موبقة)

destructive sins

Major sins that cause the destruction of the person who commits them, both in this world and the Hereafter.

Muujib (pl. muujibaat)

موجب (موجبات)

necessitating cause

Something that makes something else necessary, such as menstruation that makes it necessary for a woman to have "ghusl" (wash the whole body) before she can pray or touch the Qur'an.

muusaa موسى

Moses

A prophet of Allah sent to the Jews. The Qur'an is full of references to the Prophet Moses (PBUH), his encounters with the Pharaoh of Egypt and his story with the Jews.

muwaaHHId موحد

monotheist

Someone who does not recognize nor worship anyone except the One God, Allah.

muwaalaah [1] موالاة [1]

befriending, showing loyalty to

Befriending and showing loyalty to (which has to be Muslims).

muwaalaah [2] موالاة [2]

immediate succession

Doing things after each other immediately, such as washing the hands, rinsing the mouth, sniffing water and rinsing the norstrils … immediately after one another, without any appreciable pause in between them, when we do the ablution.

muwaaqa‘ah مواقعة

copulation

Having sexual intercourse.

muwaTTa' (al--) الموطأ

the Muwatta

The book of hadeeths compiled by imam Malik ibn Anas of Medina.

muzaar‘ah مزارعة

farming partnership

An arrangement in which the owner of a land provides the land while another takes care of the farming, and they share the crops.

muzdalifah مزدلفة

Muzdalifah

A place between ‘Arafah and Mina, where pilgrims spend the night before the tenth day of Dhul-Hijjah ("‘iid al-aDHaa").

N

naafi' (an--) النافع

The Benefit Giver

A Divine Attribute of Allah. The Only One Who can give benefits or withhold them.

naafilah (pl. nawaafil)

نافلة (نوافل)

optional practice

Optional practice, usually of worship, such as extra prayers or fasting.

naajiyah (al-firqah an--)

الناجية (الفرقة ---)

the saved group (sect)

The reference is to the Muslims that will gain salvation on the Day of Judgment as a result of following the Qur'an and the teachings of Prophet Muhammad (PBUH) meticulously, as opposed to those groups that strayed from the path in different ways.

naashiz ناشز

insubordinate wife

A wife who rebels against her husband unjustifiably. She may be deprived of financial support.

naasikh (pl. nawaasikh)

ناسخ (نواسخ)

abrogator

A decree or revelation that abrogates a previous one or modifies it.

nabiyy (pl. 'anbiyaa')

نبي (أنبياء)

prophet

A man chosen by Allah to guide a group of people to the ways of Allah and teach them His message. According to some scholars, a prophet may be a messenger of Allah; he may not be a messenger.

nabiyy (an--) al-'ummiyy

النبي الأمي

the illiterate prophet

The reference is to the

Prophet Muhammad (PBUH) who could not read nor write. Some scholars say that the word "'ummiyy" may also mean gentile (non-Jewish). In fact, both descriptions apply to the Prophet Muhammad (PBUH). (See the Qur'an, 7: 157-8).

nadhara (yandhur) نذر (ينذر)

to vow

To make a promise to Allah to do something.

nadhr (pl. nudhuur)

نذر (نذور)

vow

A promise one makes to Allah to do something, usually good.

nafaqah (pl. nafaqaat)

نفقة (نفقات)

alimony, expenses

The money usually paid by a former husband to his divorcee for her support during the 'waiting period' or for the support of his children from her, who are in her custody. The word also means expenses in general.

nafrah (an--) min 'arafah

النفرة من عرفة

rush from 'arafah

Pilgrims' move immediately after sunset of the ninth day of hajj from the plain of 'arafah to Muzdalifah where they spend the night before going to Mina on the tenth.

nafs (an--) al-'ammaarah

النفس الأمارة

the tempting self

The side of the human self that keeps tempting man to do bad things, usually to find pleasure in them. (*cf* "an-nafs al-lawwaamah" 'the blaming self / conscience').

nafs (an-) al-lawwaamah

النفس اللوامة

conscience

Literally, this means the blaming self which prevents one from doing wrong things, as opposed to the tempting self that prompts one to do bad things.

nafs (an--) al-muTma'innah النفس المطمئنة

the soul at peace
The soul of a believer.

nahaar (pl. anhur) نهار (أنهر)

day
Day, as opposed to night, which begins with sunrise and ends with sunset.

naHara (yanHar) نحر (ينحر)

to slaughter a camel
To slaughter a camel, ususally while it is in standing position.

naHr نحر

sacrifice
Originally, the word means slaughtering a camel. But in the expression "yawm an-naHr" (the day / feast of sacrifice) it means sacrifice.

nahy 'an al-munkar نهي عن المنكر

forbidding the wrong
Forbidding or stopping wrong actions, including sinful deeds and words. This can be done in action and through words.

najaah (an--) النجاة

salvation, deliverance
The case of being saved from something bad or evil. Often we hear the word in expressions like "an-najaah min an-naar" (being saved from Hell-Fire).

najaasah (pl. najaasaat) نجاسة (نجاسات)

ritually unclean / impure thing
Something that has to be removed from the body or the clothing of a Muslim before he can pray.

najas نجس

ritually unclean / impure thing
Something that has to be removed from the body or the clothing of a Muslim before he can pray.

najash نجش

deceitful outbidding
Outbidding with the sole

purpose of leading others to pay a higher price for something. Naturally, this is forbidden in Islam according to the Prophetic hadeeth on the subject.

najis نجس

ritually unclean

See "najas".

najjasa (yunajjis) نجس (ينجس)

to defile, impurify

To make something ritually unclean or impure.

nakaHa (yankaH) نكح (ينكح)

to marry

Nakiir نكير

Nakeer

The name of one of the two angels who come to the dead person in his grave for questioning. See "munkar wa nakiir".

namiimah نميمة

talesbearing, calumny

Reporting bad things said by someone against another person, which is strongly condemned by Islam.

nammaam نَمّام

talebearer, telltale

A person who reports bad things said against someone to another person.

namruud نَمْرُود

Nimrod

The tyrant pagan king who ordered Prophet Abraham (PBUH) to be thrown in the fire built for the purpose. In the Qur'an we read one of his encounters with Abraham (2: 258). In Arabic the name is used to indicate rebellion and arrogance.

naqD نقض

invalidating

Doing something that makes something invalid, such as passing water which makes the ablution invalid, or breaking a promise…etc.

naql (an--) النقل

the Text

The text of the Qur'an and prophetic traditions. A contrasting word is "'aql" (reasoning).

naSaaraa (sg. naSraaniyy) نصارى (نصراني)

Christians

See "naSraaniyy".

nasab (pl. 'ansaab) نسب (أنساب)

lineage

The family tree of a person; i.e. names of his forefathers.

nasakha (yansakhu) نسخ (ينسخ)

to abrogate

This refers to a verse of the Qur'an that was revealed after another one with a different ruling. The latter is called "naasikh" and the earlier "mansuukh".

nasii'ah نسيئة

postponed debt

A debt whose payment is postponed at the request of the indebted person. The interest charged for the postponement is called "ribaa an-nasii'ah".

naskh نسخ

abrogation

The process by which a new decree, e.g., abolihses or modifies an earlier one.

nasr نسر

Nasr

The name of a deity worshipped by the people of Prophet Noah. (See the Qur'an 71:23)

naSraaniyy (pl. naSaaraa) نصراني (نصارى)

Christian

A follower (or rather, a worshipper) of the Prophet Jesus (PBUH).

naSraaniyyah (an-) النصرانية

Christianity

Originally, the religion of Jesus, but now refers to the beliefs of Christians, which Muslims believe contradict his teachings.

naSuuH نصوح

pure, sincere

Usually this adjective is used with the word "tawbah" (repentance).

NaTiiHah نطيحة

dead by goring

An animal that is dead due to being gored by horns of another animal or its head. The meat of such an animal is forbidden to be eaten by a Muslim, because it is not properly slaughtered. (See the Qur'an, 5: 3).

nawaaqiD (sg. naaqiDah)

نواقض (ناقضة)

invalidators, invalidating acts

Acts, including verbal ones, that make a certain state (such as ritual purity) invalid. So we hear of "nawaaqiD al-wuDuu'" (invalidators of ablution), "nawaaqiD aS-Salaah" (invalidators of prayer)...

nawaasikh (sg. naasikh)

نواسخ (ناسخ)

abrogators

See "naasikh".

nifaaq نفاق

hypocrisy

nifaas نفاس

childbirth, confinement

See "nufasaa'".

niHlah 1 (pl. niHal) نحلة ١ (نحل)

sect, creed

In Islamic writings we sometimes find the term "niHal" (sects) to refer to different sects, as opposed to "milal" (religions).

niHlah 2 (pl. niHal) نحلة ٢ (نحل)

free gift

This term is found in the

Qur'an in this special sense in one verse (Chapter 4: 4).

nikaaH ('ankiHah) نكاح (أنكحة)

marriage

nikaaH faasid نكاح فاسد

invalid marriage

Marriage that violates the basic requirements of proper marriage, such as marrying a first degree relative.

nikaaH al-mut'ah نكاح المتعة

temporary marriage

Literally, this means 'marriage for pleasure'. The marriage arrangement in which both parties agree to stay married for a specified time. This is forbidden according to main stream Islam.

nikaaH ash-shighaar نكاح الشغار

mutual marriage arrangement

An arrangement in which a person gives a female in his trust to someone who does the same, without either paying the "Sadaaq". This is forbidden in Islam.

niqaab ('anqibah) نقاب (أنقبة)

veil

A veil which covers the whole face with the exception of the eyes.

niSaab (pl. 'anSibah) نصاب (أنصبة)

minimum taxable amount

The minimum amount of anything for which one should pay "zakaah". For example, forty sheep is the minimum number of sheep for one to pay alms. If one has less than forty, then he is not required to pay alms ("zakaah") on them.

niyaaHah نياحة

wailing

Wailing is forbidden in Islam. A Muslim woman may weep for losing someone, but she should not wail nor tear her clothes or the like.

niyyah (pl. niyyaat)

نيّـــة (نيات)

intention

Intention is a prerequisite for any act of worship. In fact, according to the Prophet (PBUH), deeds are judged by the intentions behind them.

nubuwwah نبوة

prophethood, prophecy

The state of being a prophet; something foretold.

nufasaa' نفساء

new mother, confined woman

A woman who has recently given birth to a baby. The term is used mainly to refer to her during the post natal bleeding period, when she is not supposed to pray or fast or touch the Qur'an.

nushuur (yawm an--)

نشور (يوم الـــ...)

Day of Resurrection

nushuuz نشوز

wife insubordination

Insubordination or refusal to give the husband his marital rights. We also find this word with reference to husbands to mean ill-treatment. (See the Qur'an, 4: 34 and 128). (See also "naashiz").

nusuk (pl. 'ansaak)

نسك أنساك

rite, ritual

Religious ritual to be observed. Very often we find the synonymous word "mansak" (pl. manaasik) used.

nuuH نوح

Noah

A major prophet of Allah who lived more than 950 years preaching the message of Allah to his people. They were drowned in the Flood, while he and the few believers with him were saved in the ark he built. (See the Qur'an, 11: 35-48 and 71).

nuun at-tanwiin نون التنوين

'n' of nunation

The /n/ which is pronounced but not written in Arabic, as an indication of indefiniteness for nouns.

nuun mutaHarrikah

نون متحركة

vocalized 'n'

The /n/ which is followed by a vowel. (*cf* "nuun saakinah")

nuun saakinah نون ساكنة

unvocalized 'n'

The /n/ which is not followed by a vowel in any word.

Nuur (an--) النور

The Light

A Divine Attribute of Allah. The Source of all light in the universe.

nuzuul al-qur'aan

نزول القرآن

revelation of the Qur'an

The process by which the Qur'an reached the Prophet Muhammad (PBUH) from Allah, through Archangel Gabriel.

Q

qaabiD (al--) القابض

The Restrainer

A Divine Attribute of Allah. The One Who withholds whatever He likes, or the One Who takes life.

qaabiil قابيل

Abel

A son of Adam and brother to Cain who killed him.

qaaDii (pl. quDaah)

قاض (قضاة)

judge

Nowadays, we hear the expression "qaadii shar'iyy" to mean a judge according to Islamic law. But in Islamic history, the word itself meant a Muslim judge.

qaadir (al--) القادر

The Ever Able

A Divine Attribute of Allah.

The One Whose ability is unlimited.

qaanit قانت

submissive, humble

Normally, this is used with reference to a person, being submissive and humble in his supplications or prayers.

qaari' (pl. qurraa') قارئ (قراء)

reader

Someone who is a professional reader of the Qur'an, normally a "HaafiZ" (who knows the Qur'an by heart, according to the rules of tajweed).

qaarin قارن

coupling hajj and 'umrah

Someone who performs both "'umrah" and "Hajj" without changing his pilgrimage garb. (*cf* "mutamatti'" and "mufrid").

qaaruun قارون

Korah

The ungrateful Israelite who was known for his great

prosperity, but boasted "I have been given it only on account of knowledge I possess." Allah caused earth to "swallow him and his dwelling". (See the Qur'an 28: 76-82).

qaaSir (pl. quSSar) قاصر (قصر)

under age

Someone who is below the age of legal responsibility; therefore, requires a guardian.

qaaTi' raHim قاطع لرحم

severer of kinship relations

Someone who does not respect kinship relations.

qaaTi' Tariiq قاطع طريق

highway robber

Someone who stops travellers to rob them.

qabuul 1 قبول ١

acceptance

In a marriage ceremony, this means the groom's accepting the offer of someone's daughter (or other female trustee) to him in marriage. (See "iijaab" {offer in marriage}).

qabuul 2 قبول ٢

acceptance

The term is usually used in conjunction with "'iijaab" (offer in marriage), and it means the groom's accepting the offer, normally made by the guardian of the bride.

daDaa 1 (yaqDii) قضى ١ (يقضي)

to rule, decree

To make a ruling. For Allah, it usually means 'to decree / ordain'.

qaDaa 2 (yaqDii) قضى ٢ (يقضي)

to pay (a debt)

It is considered a sin for an able person not to pay back a debt.

qaDaa 3 (yaqDii) bayna قضى ٣ (يقضي) بين

to arbitrate

To settle a dispute between two parties.

qaDaa' ad-dayn قضاء الدين

paying back

Paying back money borrowed from someone.

qaDaa' al-Haajah قضاء الحاجة

relieving oneself

Going to the toilet.

qaDaa' al-Hajaat / al-Hawaa'ij

قضاء الحاجات / الحوائج

fulfilling the needs

Doing things, usually for others in the way of helping them.

qaDaa' aS-Salaah

قضاء الصلاة

making up the prayer

Praying a "Salaah" which one missed to perform at the specified time for some reason or another.

qaDaa' wa qadar قضاء و قدر

Divine decree, predestination

Something decreed by Allah beforehand, and one could not do anything about it.

qadar (pl. 'aqdaar)

قدر (أقدار)

predestination, exact measure

Allah's assignment of ends to all processes of life and existence on earth. In this case, the term is conjoined with qaDaa'. The word is also used in the Qur'an (45: 49) to mean exact measure.

qaddara 1 (yuqaddir)

قدّر ١ (يقدر)

to give measure

In this sense the word originally means to calculate or estimate. But when it refers to Allah in the Qur'an it is used to mean to give exact measure as well as 'decree'. (See below).

qaddara 2 (yuqaddir)

قدّر ٢ (يقدر)

to decree, to predestinate

In this sense the word is used with reference to Allah's decree or predestination of the things that happen in the universe.

qadariyy قدري

believer in absolute free will

Someone who believes in absolute free will; therefore, he denies any form of Divine predestination. He is the opposite of the fatalist.

qadhf قذف

slander

Technically, this means slander by accusing someone of fornication (sexual intercourse out of wedlock).

qadr قدر

high esteem

qahhaar (al--) القهار

The Supreme Vanquisher

A Divine Attribute of Allah. The One to Whose power everyone and everything has submitted and submits.

qalqalah قلقلة

slight vocalization

Adding a very brief vowel-like sound to certain consonants when followed by other consonants, while reciting the Qur'an, to make their enunciation clearer. These consonants are: /q/, /t/, /b/, /j/, /d/.

qanna'ah قناعة

contentment

Accepting whatever comes to one or is given to him.

qanaTa (yaqnuT) قنط (يقنط)

to despair

The Qur'an instructs believers not to despair of Allah's mercy and forgiveness. (See the Qur'an, 39: 53).

qanata (yaqnutu) قنت (يقنت)

to humble one's self

To show humility and submission, or to supplicate with such a spirit.

qaraamiTah (sg. qurmuTiyy) قرامطة (قرمطي)

Karamathians

A Shi'ite sect who ransacked

the holy mosque in Makkah and took away the black stone, to be returned only at the orders of the Fatimite ruler of the time.

qarD Hasan قرض حسن

good loan

Loan according to the rules of Islam; that is, without interest, but for the sake of Allah.

qariin (pl. quranaa')

قرين (قرناء)

constant companion

The companion referred to could be an angel, a human or a genie. In Islamic traditions we read of every human being having a "qariin" of the "jinn", typically an unbeliever.

qariinah (pl. qaraa'in) 1

قرينة (قرائن) ١

context

It could be linguistic or situational.

qariinah (qaraa'in) 2

قرينة (قرائن) ٢

circumstantial evidence

Evidence that can be drawn from the temporal and spatial and any other circumstances.

qarn al-manaazil قرن المنازل

Qarn al-Manazil

Name of a place in the Arabian Peninsula where prospective pilgrims from Najd or those who pass by that location should start their "iHraam" status.

qasaamah قسامة

taking an oath

Technically, this means swearing to Allah when accusing or being accused of murder in order to confirm or deny the accusation.

qasam قسم

oath

Swearing to Allah.

qasm (bayn az-zawjaat) قسم (بين الزّوجات)

division of time

Equitable allotting of time (especially at night) among one's wives.

qaSr قصر

shortening

Shortening a four-"rak'ah" prayer by performing two "rak'ahs". This is permissible for someone on travel.

qaT' ar-raHim قطع الرحم

breaking family ties, allienation of relatives

To treat relatives as strangers, or ignore one's duties to his relations, sometimes by mistreating them, which is a great sin. This is the opposite of "Silat ar-raHim".

qaT' aT-Tariiq قطع الطريق

brigandry, highway robbery

This is a major crime in Islamic law. The Qur'anic ruling regarding the punishment is given in Chapter 5: 33.

qaT' al-yad قطع اليد

chopping off the hand

The punishment for stealing worthy objects from a safe place for the sake of stealing or making money is chopping the right hand off from the wrist. If any of the preconditions is not fulifilled, such as stealing out of hunger, then the thief's hand may not be chopped off.

qaTaa'i' قطائع

land grants

Land grants usually given by the ruler to some of his subjects.

qaTii'at ar-raHim قطيعة الرحم

alienation of relatives

See "qaT' ar-raHim".

qatl al-'amd قتل العمد

murder

Intentionally killing someone. This is considered not only a

major crime but also a major sin. Capital punishment or payment of “diyyah” (blood money) may be applied, depending on the wish of the family of the victim.

qatl al-khaTa' قتل الخطأ

manslaughter

Unintentional killing of a person. For the ruling on this, see the Qur'an, 4: 92.

qawad قود

retaliatory punishment

See "qiSaaS".

qawiyy (al--) القوي

The Omnipotent

A Divine Attribute of Allah. The One Whose power knows no limits.

qayyuum (al--) القيوم

The Ever-Subsisting

A Divine Attribute of Allah. The One Who is Eternal and ever supports the existence of others.

qiblah قبلة

direction

When the term is used in anunqualified manner, it usually refers to the direction of the Ka‘bah, which a Muslim should face when praying.

qimaar قمار

gambling

Gambling is forbidden by Islam, and it is considered a work of Satan. (See the Qur'an, 5: 90).

qinTaar (pl. qanaaTiir)

قنطار (قناطير)

talent

A weight equivalent to 1200 ounces of gold.

qiraa'aat (al--) as-sab‘

القراءات السبع

seven modes of recitation

Specialists in tajweed talk of seven and ten modes of recitation of the Qur'an. These are simple variations in

the pronunciation of certain words, attributed to the different dialects. (See "sab'at 'aHruf").

qiraan قران

wedlock, coupling

qiSaaS قصاص

retaliatory punishment

Punishment, both retributive and compensatory. It includes killing the murderer, the ruling of "an eye for an eye" as well as compensatory payment of money.

qiwaamah قوامة

charge, guardianship

Being in charge and responsible for support of family.

qiyaam قيام

standing position

In formal prayers, the standing position, as opposed to bowing, prostrating or sitting.

qiyaam al-layl قيام الليل

night vigil

Spending the night in devotions, usually praying.

qiyaamah (al--) القيامة

The Resurrection

Islam emphasizes the concept of physical resurrection, when the whole creation will be brough back to life in body and soul. (See the Qur'an, 22: 1-7; 75: 1-13; 78: 17-40; 80: 33-34, 42).

qiyaas قياس

analogy

Literally, it means 'measuring', but technically it means analogy, which is one of the main sources of Islamic law.

qubaa' قباء

Quba'

A suburb of modern Medina (al-Madinah al-Munawwarah) in Saudi Arabia, which lies to

the south of the town. Prophet Muhammad stayed there upon his arrival to Medina from Mecca in the "hijrah". The first mosque in Islam was built there, and it is frequented by visitors to Medina. (See the Qur'an 9:108)

qubul قبل

genitalia

The male or female sex organ.

qudduus (al--) القدوس

The Most Holy

A Divine Attribute of Allah. The One Who is All-Pure and Blemishless.

qunuut قنوت

humility, submission

A common expression with which this term is associated is “du‘aa' al-qunuut” which is often said in the “witr” prayer, the last voluntary prayer performed during the night.

qur' (pl. quruu') قرء (قروء)

menstrual period

Qur'anic commentators have differed whether this word means the time of menstruation or the time between two menstruations.

qur'aan (al--) القرآن

The Qur'an

The Exact Words of Allah revealed to the Prophet Muhammad (PBUH). It consists of 114 chapters. The word “qur'aan” means reading or recitation.

qur‘ah قرعة

casting lots

Usually, we hear the expression "yujrii qur‘ah" or the verb "yaqtari‘" (to cast lots) for permissible things, not gambling.

quraysh قريش

Quraysh tribe

The noblest of Arab tribes, who lived in Makkah and were considered the guardians and keepers of the Ka'bah. The Prophet Muhammad (PBUH) belonged to this tribe.

qurbaan (pl. qaraabiin) قربان (قرابين)

offering

Usually, an animal slaughtered as an offering to Allah. A large portion or all of the meat is normally given to the poor and needy.

qurbah (pl. qurubaat) قربة (قربات)

good deed

A deed performed by a Muslim to become nearer to Allah.

qurraa' (sg. qaari') قرّاء (قارئ)

reciters, readers

Usually, this refers to people who know the Qur'an by heart and recite it well.

qu'uud قعود

sitting

Sitting position, synonymous to "juluus".

R

raafi' (ar--) الرّافع

The Raiser

A Divine Attribute of Allah. The One Who raises the position or status of those who obey His commands.

raafiDah (sg. raafiDiyy)

رافضَة (رافضي)

rejectionist

A term used to refer to Shi'ites who reject the right of the first three righteous caliphs to the caliphate, claiming that Ali (RAA) was supposed to be the first successor to the Prophet (PBUH).

raahib (pl. ruhbaan)

راهب (رهبان)

monk

Though the word may be translated as 'monk' in general, in Islamic terminology it is used to refer to Christian monks who led lives of devotion in monasteries.

raa'i(n) (pl. ru'aah)

راعٍ (رعاة)

person in charge

Lexically, the word means a 'shepherd', but it is used to mean anyone in charge of others.

raa'ish رائِش

bribery mediator

The person who mediates between the bribing and bribed persons. He is a sinner like them.

raaki' راكع

bowing (in prayer)

A person in the bowing position. See "rukuu'" (bowing).

raashii (ar--) الرّاشي

briber

A person who offers a bribe to another. He is a partner in the crime, which is a great sin. The other two sinners are the culprits: "al-murtashii" (the seeker of the bribe), and "ar-raa'ish" (the go-between).

raawii (pl. ruwaat) al-Hadiith راوي (رواة) الحديث

narrator, transmitter

The person who reports a prophetic tradition.

raaziq (ar--) / ar-razzaaq الرّازق / الرّزّاق

The Best Provider

A Divine Attribute of Allah. The provider for every being in the universe, Whose bounties have no limits.

rabb (pl. 'arbaab) رب (أرباب)

lord, master / owner

In the Qur'an the word is found both in the singular and plural forms. It is used in the sense of deity or Allah as well as lord and master.

rabii' al-'aakhar ربيع الآخر

Rabi' the Second.

Another name for "rabii' ath-thaanii", the fourth month of the Islamic calendar.

rabii' al-awwal ربيع الأول

Rabi' the First

The third month of the Islamic calendar. It was in this month that the Prophet Muhammad (PBUH) was born, most probably on the 12th day of that month in the year 570 AD.

rabii' ath-thaanii ربيع الثاني

Rabi' the Second

The fourth month of the Islamic calendar.

raDaa' رَضاع

breast feeding

Breast feeding (especillay five or more times) makes the woman a 'foster mother' to

the baby if it is not her own. This has legal ramifications in the area of marriage. The foster brothers and sisters in this sense cannot marry each other.

raD'ah (pl. raD'aat) رضعة (رضعات)

breast feeding once

Every time a woman breast feeds a baby this is called "raD'ah". The number of times (five or more) is very important in the case of the woman feeding another person's baby. (See "raDaa'").

radd as-salaam ردّ السّلام

return a greeting

See "radd at-taHiyyah".

radd at-taHiyyah ردّ التّحيّة

returning the greeting

The Qur'an teaches Muslims that when they are greeted they should return the same or with better greeting.

radhiilah (pl. radhaa'il) رذيلة (رذائل)

vice

Sinful act.

raDiya allaahu 'anhu رضي الله عنه

May Allah be pleased with him

A prayer often said after mentioning the name of a companion of the Prophet Muhammad (PBUH). If it is a female then we say "'anhaa" instead of "'anhu".

rafath رَفَث

obscenity

The word has been translated into 'obscenity, lewdness and sex act' all of which are forbidden for the pilgrim during pilgrimage.

rahbaaniyyah رهبانية

monasticism

Devoting one's life to worshipping Allah. The term is often used with reference to Christianity.

rahbah رهبة

awe

With reference to a Muslim's relation with Allah, this term means fear of disobedience to Allah.

raHiim (ar--) الرّحيم

The Most Merciful

A Divine Attribute of Allah. The One Who shows special mercy to the believers. (*cf* "ar-raHmaan").

raHim 1 (pl. arHaam) رحم ١ (أرحام)

womb

raHim 2 (pl. arHaam) رحم ٢ (أرحام)

blood relative

See "dhawuu ar-raHim".

raHmaan (ar--) الرّحمن

The All-Merciful, Beneficent

A Divine Attribute of Allah. The One Whose mercy encompasses the whole universe, including the disbelievers. This name or attribute is never used except with Allah, unlike most of the other attributes that may be used with others.

raHmah رحمة

mercy, kindness

This word means not just mercy, but it means kindness, tenderness, caring and the like as well.

ra'iyyah رعيّة

subjects

People under the charge of a certain person, be it a ruler, a father or a mother. (See "raa'i(n)").

rajab رجب

Rajab

The seventh month of the Islamic calendar.

raj'ah [1] رجعة ١

revoking the divorce

See "raj'iyy (Talaaq)".

raj'ah [2] رجعة ٢

return, change of mind

raj'iyy (Talaaq) رجعي (طلاق)

revocable (divorce)

First time and second time divorces are considered revocable in the sense that a divorced wife may go back to her ex-husband within the waiting period (three 'menstrual periods'). After that waiting period they may not go back unless they remarry. This ruling is contrasted with "Talaaq baa'in".

rajiim (ar--) الرّجيم

The outcast

This term is used to describe Satan who is cursed and outcast from Divine mercy, due to his rebellion against Allah and His commands.

rajm رجم

stoning

Throwing stones at sth. or sb. But often it refers to stoning to death of the adulterer and adulteress.

rajm bi-l-ghayb رجم بالغيب

conjecture

Making a baseless statement or conclusion.

rak'ah (pl. rak'aat) ركعة (ركعات)

a bowing

Technically, this covers not just bowing, but a set of actions that are done in "Salaah": standing, bowing, two prostrations and the sitting between them. (See "rukuu'").

ramaDaan رمضان

Ramadan

The ninth month of the Muslim calendar which is the month of fasting.

ramal (ar--) الرَّمَل

jogging

Walking fairly swiftly in the first three rounds of

circumambulation around the Ka'bah, to be done by men only. This is observed only in the "Tawaaf" for "'umrah" or "Hajj".

ramy رَمي

throwing, stoning

The term refers to throwing seven pebbles at the pillar of the 'jamrah" in Mina as part of the pilgrimage rituals.

raqabah رقبة

person

This is often found in the context of liberating slaves. So we find the expression "'itq raqabah" (setting a slave free). Literally, it means a neck.

raqiib (ar--) الرّقيب

The Ever-Watching

A Divine Attribute of Allah. One Who is constantly Watchful of His creatures' actions.

rashiid (ar--) الرّشيد

The Ever-Right

A Divine Attribute of Allah. The One Who never errs in His decisions or actions, and Who guides others.

rashwah رَشوة

bribery

Paying undeserved something to someone for favours or services. Bribery is strongly condemned in Islam. In fact, the Prophet (PBUH) is reported to have condemned the giver of the bribe, the receiver and the mediator.

rasuul (pl. rusul) رسول (رسل)

messenger, apostle

In the religious context, this usually refers to a prophet sent by the Almighty Allah to a certain nation or to the whole world (as in the case of the Prophet Muhammad (PBUH).

rattala (yurattil) رتل (يرتل)

to recite carefully

See “tartiil”.

ra'uuf (ar--) الرّؤوف

The Ever-Compassionate

A Divine Attribute of Allah. The One Who is Most Kind and Merciful.

rawaa (yarwii) روى (يروي)

report, narrate

The word is used in its general sense as well as technical sense, which means to report a Prophetic tradition.

rawDah (ar--) ash-shariifah الرّوضة الشّريفة

the holy Rawdah

The name of the section in the Prophet Muhammad's Mosque which lies between the tomb of the Prophet and his pulpit. Reference is made in a tradition of the Prophet PBUH) that this part is a "rawDah" (garden) of the gardens of Paradise.

ribaa ربَا

usury, interest

Taking interest on loans, which is forbidden in Islam and is strongly condemned in the Qur'an where it is sharply contrasted with charity. (See the Qur'an, 2: 275-276).

ribaaT رباط

guarding Muslim frontier

Guarding the boundaries of Muslim lands against possible attacks from the enemies. It is considered one of the highly praiseworthy forms of worship.

ribawiyy ربَوي

usury related

A transaction that involves usury.

ridaa' ('ardiyah) ردَاء (أردية)

upper torso cover

The sheet used by a male pilgrim (for example) to cover the upper part of his body, as opposed to the “izaar” for the lower part.

riddah ردّة

apostasy

Abandoning one's faith. Islam forbids this for a Muslim; the penalty being death.

riDwaan [1] رِضوان ١

pleasure, satisfaction

Very often, this term refers to Divine Pleasure. In other words, it refers to Allah's being pleased with someone, which should be the ultimate goal of a believer's actions and deeds.

riDwaan [2] رِضوان ٢

RiDwaan

Name of the angel in charge of guarding Paradise.

rihaan رِهان

security, pledge

Something a borrower, for example, leaves with the lender for security. This meaning should not be confused with the modern usage which is 'betting'.

rijaal al-Hadiith رجال الحديث

narrators of the hadeeth

The term refers to all the people involved in transmitting the Hadiith (prophetic tradition). Knowledge about them helps determine the degree of its authenticity.

rijs رِجس

abomination

Something most detested in the sight of Allah, which implies prohibition. (See the Qur'an, 5: 90).

rikaaz (pl. 'arkizah)

ركاز (أركزة)

buried treasure or minerals

Natural or buried treasures found in one's land, including minerals and precious stones. There are certain regulations regarding the "zakaah" on these.

risaalah (pl. risaalaat) رسالة (رسالات)

(Divine) message

The message given to Allah's messengers to convey to mankind. In this sense, it is synonymous to 'religion'.

riwaayat al-Hadiith رواية الحديث

narration of the hadeeth

Reporting prophetic traditions. The science of hadeeth authentication stipulates that a "hadeeth" would not be accepted unless we know the exact chain of transmitters up to the Prophet Muhammad (PBUH).

riyaa' رِياء

making show, sanctiminy, sanctiminiousness

Doing something good to get attention and admiration of people, not to please Allah. This is considered a case of "shirk aSghar" (minor polytheism), because the doer of such an act is in a sense, associating others with Allah.

rizq (pl. 'arzaaq) رِزق (أرزاق)

provision, sustenance

Normally, the term is used in the context of Allah's provisions for His creation for their sustenance, since He is the true Provider.

ru'yaa رؤيا

dream, vision

Usually, a good dream.

ru'yaa (SaaliHah) رؤيا (صالحة)

good dream

A dream whose meaning may come true.

ru'yat al-hilaal رؤية الهلال

sighting of new moon

Since the Islamic calendar is based on the lunar month, it is important to look for the new moon (crescent) to determine the beginning of the month.

rubuubiyyah ربوبية

Lordship, Sovereignty

See "rabb".

rukhSah (pl. rukhaS)

رخصة (رخص)

licence, permission

Licence to do something. For example, an ill person has the licence to break the fast during Ramadan, and make up for the day(s) later.

rukn (ar--) al-yamaanii

الرّكن اليماني

the Yamaanii (Southern) Corner

The Corner of the Ka'bah just before the Black Stone. The person doing "Tawaaf" starts here to recite the prayer which translates: "Our Lord, give us good in this world and good in the Hereafter and save us from Hell fire" until he reaches the Black Stone.

rukn (pl. arkaan) رِكن (أركان)

corner-stone, pillar

The supporting element of a structure. The term is used in many contexts to mean somethingabsolutely essential, such as "arkaan al-islam", "arkaan al-iimaan", "arkaan aS-Salaah"...etc.

rukuu' رُكوع

bowing

Rukuu' in the "Salaah" (formal prayer) means: bowing with one's palms resting on the knees with the back as straight as possible. One's eyes should be kept on the spot where he puts his forehead during prostration.

ruqyah (pl. ruqaa) رُقية (رُقى)

Islamic incantation

Verses from the Qur'an and/or prophetic prayers recited for cure from various types of illnesses, psychological and physical.

ruuH (ar--) al-amiin الرّوح الأمين

The Trustworthy Spirit

The term refers to Archangel Gabriel, who brought the Divine messages from Allah to His messengers.

ruuH (pl. 'arwaaH) روح (أرواح)

soul, spirit

The essence of life whose departure means death. According to Islamic teachings, the soul does not die, but it leaves the body, and it will come back to it upon Resurrection.

ruuH al-qudus رُوح القدس

Holy Spirit

A reference to Archangel Gabriel.

ruum (ar--) الرّوم

Romans, Byzantines

In Islamic history, the term is used to refer to the Romans, especially the people of Byzantine or Eastern Roman Empire.

S

sa‘aa [1] (yas‘aa) سعى ١ (يسعى)

to walk between Safa and Marwah.
See “sa‘y”.

sa‘aa [2] (yas‘aa) سعى ٢ (يسعى)

to work for, pursue
We have this verb in expressions like “sa‘aa ‘alaa quuti ‘iyaalih / rizqihi” (to work to earn a living’), or “sa‘aa fii al-amr” (to pursue the matter).

saa‘ah (as--) السّاعة

The Hour
The Time of Resurrection.

Saa‘ (pl. aSwaa‘) صاع (أصواع)

Sa‘
An Islamic unit of dry measure. For wheat, it is roughly equivalent to 2.172 kg.

Saabi'ah (aS--)/ aS-Saabi'uun الصّابئة / الصّابئون

Sabians, Sabaeans
A group of people in the Fertile Crescent who are believed to believe in stars and to worship them, or they worship the angels. In the Qur'an, they are grouped along with Christians and Jews. (See the Qur'an, 5: 69).

Saabir صابر

patient, perseverent
This terms refers to the person who shows patience and acceptance of misfortunes and / or perseveres in the doing of good deeds.

Saadiq صادق

truthful
Someone who is telling the truth.

SaaHib al-Huut صاحب الحوت

man of the whale
The reference to Jonah. See "dhuu an-nuun".

SaaHib (pl. aSHaab) an-niSaab صاحب (أصحاب) النّصاب

holder of "niSaab"

Someone who has the specified amount of anything for the payment of "zakaah", such as 40 or more heads of sheep. See "niSaab".

saaHir (pl. saHarah)

ساحر (سحرة)

sorcerer

See "saHarah" and "siHr".

saa'il سائل

beggar, questioner

The term could mean either, depending on the context.

Saa'im صائم

fasting

See "Sawm".

saa'imah (pl. sawaa'im)

سائمة (سوائم)

grazing cattle

In the calculation of "zakaah" these are treated differently from cattle that is fed by the owner.

saajid (pl. sujjad) ساجد (سُجّد)

prostrating person

See "sujuud".

sa'ala [1] (yas'al)

سأل ١ (يسأل)

to question

In a technical sense this means to ask in the form of interrogation, for example in the grave or in the Hereafter.

sa'ala [2] (yas'ala) an-naas

سأل ٢ (يسأل) الناس

to beg

This is considered by Islam a detestable act, since it degrades the person who does it. In fact, the Prophet (PBUH) warned those who beg needlessly.

SaaliH صالح

Saleh

Name of a prophet who lived in North - Western Arabia, mentioned in many verses of the Qur'an. (See 27: 45-53). His people were called "thamuud".

SaaliH (pl. SaaliHaat) صالح (صالحات)

good deed

The word is short for "'amal SaaliH" (a good deed).

SaaliH (pl. SaaliHuun) صالح (صالحون)

good, righteous man

Very often, the term is used to refer to a pious person.

saamiriyy (as--) السّامري

the Samaritan

In the Qur'an, the word is used to refer to the Israelite who misled the followers of Moses, during his absence, to worship the golden calf. (See the Qur'an 20: 85-91.)

saarah سارة

Sara

The name of the wife of Prophet Abraham (PBUH) and mother of Isaac. She is not mentioned by name in the Qur'an.

sab'at 'aHruf سبعة أحرُف

seven modes

Qur'anic study specialists say this expression, used by the Prophet (PBUH), refers to seven 'dialects', modes or variations in reading / reciting the Qur'an. Naturally, these variations apply to a limited number of words or groups of words in the Qur'an.

sab' (as--) al-mathaanii السّبع المثاني

the seven oft-repeated

The reference is most probably to the Opening Chapter of the Qur'an which consists of seven verses, and it is recited at least 17 times in a Muslim's five daily prayers. Muslims also recite this chapter on many occasions for blessing.

Saba'a (yaSba') صبأ (يصبأ)

renounce one's religion

This expression was frequently used by polytheists

to refer to conversion to Islam, because they looked at it from the point of view of renouncing the religion of their forefathers.

sabab (pl. asbaab) an-nuzuul سبب (أسباب) النّزول

occasion of the revelation

The occasion on which certain verses of the Qur'an were revealed. Knowledge of such occasions is necessary for the correct interpretation of such verses.

sabbaHa (yusabbiH) سبّح (يسبّح)

to glorify (Allah)

To glofiy Allah in general, or to say: "subHaan-allaah" (Glorified be Allah).

sabiil allaah سبيل الله

way (cause) of Allah

Normally, we have this phrase as a part of the expression: "fii sabiili-llaah" (In the cause of Allah).

sabiilaan (as--) السّبيلان

the two outlets

This refers to the outlets of urine and stool (private parts). Anything that comes out of them, as well as touching them, makes one ritually impure. Ablution is necessary before one can perform "Salaah".

Sabr صبر

patience, perseverance

The term is fairly comprehensive, implying forbearance, endurance and persistence. It is a highly recommended trait for a Muslim.

Sabuur (aS--) الصّبور

The Ever-Patient

A Divine Attribute of Allah. The One Who never gets impatient, even with the sinners.

Sadaaq صَدَاق

dower

The money or gift paid by the groom to his bride, normally specified in the marriage agreement. Often, people specify an instant amount ("mu'ajjal aS-Sadaaq") and a postponed amount ("mu'akhkhar al-Sadaaq").

Sadaaq mu'ajjal صداق مؤجَّل

deferred dower

The part of the dower agreed by the bride to be paid to her at a later date, usually upon separation from her husband.

Sadaaq mu'ajjal صداق معجَّل

immediate dower

The dower to be paid by the groom to his bride at the wedding time.

sadanat al-bayt / al-ka'bah سدنة البيت/ الكعبة

keepers of the Ka'bah

People who are in charge of the Ka'bah and take care of it. Officially, there has been one family which has been keeping the key to the Ka'bah, since it was given to them by the Prophet (PBUH), it is said.

Sadaqa (yaSduqu) يصدُق (صدق)

to be truthful

To be truthful here includes telling the truth (not lying) and being truthful in action; that is, one's actions reflect his words.

Sadaqah (pl. Sadaqaat) صدقة (صدقات)

charity

Charity or charitable act. According to Islam, any good deed that helps someone is a charitable deed for which a Muslim will receive rewards from Allah. More specifically, "Sadaqah" means giving money or the like to needy people.

Sadaqat al-fiTr صدقة الفطر

fast breaking charity

Sometimes, it is called "zakaat al-fiTr". (See that term).

sadd adh-dharaa'i' سدّ الذرائع

prevention of means (to sins)

Closing the door against possibility of committing illegal things. Sometimes, a permissible act may be forbidden by the law, because it leads or may most probably lead to illegal actions.

Sadr al-'islaam صدر الإسلام

early Islamic era

Usually, it refers to the time of the Prophet Muhammad (PBUH).

Safaa (aS--) wa al-marwah الصّفا والمروة

Safa and Marwah Mounts

The two rocky hills adjacent to the Hoy Mosque of Makkah, between which the pilgrim perfoms the "sa'y" (walking seven times, while reciting prayers). (See "sa'y").

Safar صفَر

Safar

The second month in the Islamic calendar.

safiih (pl. sufahaa') سفيه (سفهاء)

imbecile, foolish

Sometimes, this word is used to mean 'vulgar'.

Safiyy allaah صفي الله

Allah's chosen

A person especially chosen by Allah to receive special favours, such as Prophet Muhammad (PBUH). One of the Prophet's names is "al-muSTafaa" (the chosen one).

safk ad-dimaa' سفك الدّماء

blood shed, killing

Normally, this refers to senseless killing or mass murder.

Saghirrah (pl. Saghaa'ir)

صغيرة (صغائر)

minor sin

Sins which are committed by a person, often inadvertently, and are not criminal in nature. There are no specified punishments for them. Unless they hurt others, then "istighfaar" will be sufficient for their forgiveness.

SaHaabah (sg. SaHaabiyy)

صحابة (صحابي)

Companions

Companions of the Prophet Muhammad (PBUH); i.e., Muslims who met him. Many struggled with him and defended him, and were responsible for carrying his message after his death. Therefore, they deserve a special consideration and respect.

SaHaabiyy (pl. SaHaabah)

صحابي (صحابة)

Companion

Companion of the Prophet Muhammad (PBUH). (See "SaHaabah"). Due to their special status, a Muslim is recommended to say "raDiya-llaahu 'anhu (RAA)" (May Allah be pleased with him) upon mentioning the name of any SaHaabiyy.

saHarah (sg. saaHir)

سحَرة (ساحِر)

sorcerers, magicians

Practitioners of black magic. (See "siHr").

SaHiifat al-a'maal

صحيفة الأعمال

record of deeds

The record kept for everyone wherein the recording angels write every deed and word one does or says anywhere and at any time. On the Day of Judgement this record will be produced for him.

SaHiiH صحيح

sound

One of the degrees of authenticity of the hadeeth text, based on the evaluation of the transmitters of the text. "SaHiiH" is considered the highest degree.

SaHiiH (pl. SiHaaH)

صحيح (صحاح)

authentic / sound book

A book of prophetic traditions compiled on the basis of very strict rules of sifting and authentication procedures, such as "SaHiiH al-bukhaarii".

SaHiiH al-bukhaarii

صحيح البخاري

al-Bukhari Authentic Book

The book of prophetic traditions compiled by Imam al-Buhkari (810-870 AD), according to his extremely stringent rules of sifting and authentication procedures. Naturally, what we have in his book, which consists of a few volumes, represents only a small portion of the hadeeths he had examined. This book is considered the most authentic compilation of hadeeth, due to the very meticulous ways of the compiler.

SaHiiH muslim صحيح مسلم

Muslim Authentic Book

The book of prophetic traditions compiled by Imam Muslim (820-875 AD), according to his strict rules of sifting and authentication procedures. Naturally, what we have in his book, which consists of a few volumes, represents only a small portion of the hadeeths he had examined.

SaHiiHaan (aS--) الصّحيحان

The Two Authentic Books

The two books of authentic prophetic traditions, one compiled by Imam al-Bukhari ("SaHiiH al-bukhaarii") and

the other by Imam Muslim ("SaHiiH muslim").

sahm (pl.'ashum) سهم (أسهم)

share

In the distribution of war booties, the term "sahm" is used to indicate the share of each fighter. The number of shares depends whether the fighter is a member of the infantry or a rider.

Sahw سهو

forgetfulness, inattention

Basically, the word means 'inattention' or not paying attention to something. But it is also used to mean neglecting something inadvertently.

Sa'iid Tayyib صعيد طيّب

clean dust

The reference here is to the dust that one gets from touching the earth in a spot that has not been soiled by any "najaasah". It can be used for "tayammum" (dry ablution).

sajdah (pl. sajdaat)
سجدة (سجدات)

prostration once

See "sujuud".

sajdat at-tilaawah
سجدة التّلاوة

recitation prostration

A prostration one makes upon reciting specific verses from the Qur'an, such as 96:19. There are a few places in the Qur'an where this prostration is recommended.

sajada (yasjud) سجد (يسجد)

to prostrate

Technically, prostration (sujuud) in Islam means putting one's forehead and nose on the floor, supporting the body with the open palms, the knees and the toes, all of which should touch the floor.

sakhaT-allaah سخط الله

Divine wrath

Anger of Allah, brought about by disobeying His commands and/or causing

destruction and harm to innocent creatures.

sakiinah سكينة

calmness, tranquility

The feeling of peace and tranquility or the observance of such an attitude.

saktah (pl. saktaat)

سكتة (سكتات)

pause

In "tajwiid" terminology, this means pausing very briefly, without taking a breath. This is contrasted with "waqfah" which means a stop.

Salaah (aS--) al-'ibraahiimiyyah الصّلاة الإبراهيمية

Abrahamic blessing prayers

The second part of "tashahhud" prayers, which begins: "allaahumma Salli 'alaa muHammadin wa'alaa 'aali muhHammadin kamaa Sallayta 'alaa 'ibraahiima wa'alaa 'aali "ibraahiima..." (O Allah, shower your blessings on Muhammad and the family of Muhammad as you did on Abraham and the family of Abraham...).

Salaah (pl. Salawaat)

صلاة (صلوات)

fomral prayer

The prayer that one performs, not just says, like the regular five daily prayers, as opposed to "du'aa'" (supplication).

Salaah (aS--) al-wusTaa

الصّلاة الوسطى

the middle prayer

This refers to either dawn ("fajr") or afternoon ("'aSr") prayers. Both are emphasized for their special significance. Dawn is middle in the sense that it is preceded by sunset and late evening and followed by noon and afternoon. The afternoon is preceded by dawn and noon and followed by sunset and late evening prayers.

Salaah faa'itah صلاة فائتة

missed prayer

The obligatory prayer not performed in its regular time for some reason or another. It is considered like a debt, to be performed as soon as possible.

Salaah maktuubah صلاة مكتوبة

obligatory prayer

Any of the five daily prayers which must be observed by a Muslim.

salaam سلام

peace

A key word in Islam, to which the word Islam is lexically related. One of the Divine Attributes of Allah is "as-salaam", and one of the names of Paradise is "daar as-salaam". The word is also used in greeting, bidding farewell and in concluding the "Salaah" (formal prayer).

Salaam (as--) السّلام

The Supreme Peace

A Divine Attribute of Allah: the Only true Source of peace and tranquility.

Salaat (aS--) 'alaa an-nabiyy الصّلاة على النبي

prayer for blessings on the Prophet

See "Sallaa (yuSallii) 'ala an-nabiyy".

Salaat al-'iidayn صلاة العيدين

two Eid prayers

The two Eids of "al-fitr" and "al-aDHaa" have special services. The service consists of a two-"rak'ah prayer, with extra "takbiir" in the standing position, followed by the sermon. The service is recommended to be done in the open, if possible, as it was done by the Prophet (PBUH).

Salaat al-fadhdh / al-fard

صلاة الفَذّ / الفرد

praying alone

Usually, this refers to performing alone the prayers which are normally held in congregation.

Salaat al-farD صلاة الفرض

obligatory prayer

Each of the five daily prayers.

Salaat al-istikhaarah

صلاة الاستخارة

prayer for guidance

This consists of two "rak'ahs". After the "Salaah" a person says a prayer the gist of which says: "O Allah, I seek Your guidance, because You know what I do not. If you know that X is good for me make it easy for me, but if it is bad for me turn it away from me and keep me away from it, and guide me to what is good for me."

Salaat al-istisqaa'

صلاة الاستسقاء

rain seeking prayer

A special service held to ask Allah for rain. It consists of a sermon and supplications for rain and a two- "rak'ah" prayer.

Salaat al-jamaa'ah

صلاة الجماعة

congregational prayer

Performing (the obligatory prayer) in a group of people. Sometimes, even two worshippers could be considered a group for this purpose. In the hadeeth we are told that praying in a group is 27 times better than praying alone.

Salaat al-janaazah

صلاة الجنازة

funeral prayer

The prayer for the deceased person is done in the following manner. The "imaam" stands with the

corpse in front of him, and the other worshippers standing behind him. It consists of four “takbiirs”, without bowing or prostration.

Salaat al-jum‘ah صلاة الجمعة

Friday service

The Friday service consists of a two- part sermon, followed by two “rak‘ahs”.

Salaat al-khawf صلاة الخوف

prayer of the fighters

Literally, this means the prayer of fear or danger. It means praying in the battlefield while the worshippers are in danger of being attacked by the enemy. There are certain procedures to be followed in such a case. (See the Qur'an, 4: 102).

Salaat al-kusuuf wa al-khusuuf صلاة الكسوف والخسوف

eclipse prayer

The prayer is performed upon the eclipse of the sun (kusuuf) or the moon (khusuuf). Special procedures are observed in this “Salaah”.

Salaat al-layl صلاة الليل

night prayers

This usually refers to the supererogatory prayers one performs during the night. The best time is the last third of the night.

Salaat al-mariiD صلاة المريض

the prayer of the ill

Depending on the nature of the illness, certain types of licences are given to the ill person in performing the “Salaah”.

Salaat al-musaafir صلاة المسافر

traveller's prayer

A person on travel may shorten the four “ra‘ah” prayers to two “rak‘ahs” and combine the noon and afternoon prayers together and the sunset and late evening prayers together.

Salaat al-qiyaam صلاة القيام

late night prayer

The optional prayers performed by some people late at night, preferably towards the last third portion of the night. Sometimes, the term is used to mean "Salaat at-taraawiiH".

Salaat an-naafilah صلاة النافلة

voluntary / supererogatory prayer

See "Salaat at-taTawwu'".

Salaat as-sunnah صلاة السنّة

sunnah prayer

The prayer observed by the Prophet Muhammad (PBUH), before and after the regular obligatory prayers.

Salaat at-tahajjud

صلاة التّهجُّد

late night prayers

Prayers performed usually very late at night by a devout believer.

Salaat at-taraawiih

صلاة التّراويح

taraaweeh prayer

The special prayers performed during Ramadan after the late evening prayer. It may consist of any number of two-"rak'ah" sets (often between 4 and 10).

Salaat at-taTawwu'

صلاة التطوُّع

supererogatory prayer

Prayers performed by a Muslim above and beyond those required and/or specified by the religion. Another term is "naafilah" prayer.

Salaat al-witr صلاة الوِتر

witr prayer

The salat performed at the end of the night, usually consisting of one or three rak'as (an odd number); hence the name "witr".

salaf (as--) aS-SaaliH السّلف الصّالح

the good predecessors

Often, this term is used to refer to the first three generations of Muslims, though it simply means the pious predecessors or earlier generations. The word "salaf" is contrasted with "khalaf" {successor(s) or later generation(s)}.

salas al-bawl سلس البول

incontinence

Inability to control urination, especially the passing of drops of urine.

Salawaat (aS--) al-khams الصّلوات الخمس

the five prayers

The regualr daily prayers to be observed by a Muslim at their specified times (fajr, Zuhr, 'aSr, maghrib, 'ishaa').

Salla-llaahu 'alayhi wa-sallam صلّى الله عليه وسلّم

Blessings and peace of Allah be upon him.

This is the expression a Muslim often says after mentioning the Prophet Muhammad or his name. Every time a Muslim says that he receives blessings from Allah too. Sometimes, this expression is shortened to "'alayhi-ssalaam" (Peace be upon him – PBUH).

Sallaa (yuSallii) صلّى (يصلّي)

to pray

To perform formal prayers ("Salaah").

Sallaa (yuSallii) 'alaa an-nabiyy صلّى (يصلّي) على النبيّ

to pray for blessings on the Prophet

Saying something like "Salla-llaahu 'alayhi wa sallam" (Blessings and peace from Allah be upon him) or

"allaahumma Salli 'ala muHammad" (O Allah, shower your blessings on Muhammad).

sallama [1] (yusallim)
سلّم ١ (يسلّم)

to greet
Literally, it means 'to say: "assalaamu 'alaykum", but it is often used simply to refer to greeting.

sallama [2] (yusallim) amrahu
سلّم ٢ (يسلّم) أمره

to surrender oneself
To put oneself in the hands of someone. Very often, the expression is used in the context of leaving one's affairs to Allah ("li-llaah"), meaning resigning his will to Divine Will.

sam' (as--) waT-Taa'ah
السّمع والطّاعة

hearing and obeying
Full obedience.

samaaHat al-islaam
سماحة الإسلام

Islamic tolerance
The spirit of tolerance Islam teaches its followers to observe in dealing with non-Muslims. It is also used to refer to the easy, uncomplicated nature of Islam.

Samad (aS--) [1] الصّمد ١

The Everlasting Refuge
A Divine Attribute of Allah. The One Whose protection all creatures seek.

Samad (aS--) [2] الصّمد ٢

eternally Besought of all
One of the unique attributes of Allah, and means that everyone and everything seeks His help in all affairs all the time.

sami'a-llaahu li-man Hamidah سَمِعَ الله لِمَن حمِده

Allah hears whoever thanks Him
This is the expression a Muslim normally says upon

raising his head from the bowing position in formal prayers.

samii' (as--) السّميع

The All-Hearing

A Divine Attribute of Allah. The One Who hears everything, however low or inaudible it might be.

Sammaa 1 (yusammii)

سمّى ١ (يسمّي)

to say: "bismillaah"

This is short for "sammaa bi-llaah" that is, to say: "In the Name of Allah…"

Sammaa 2 (yusammii)

سمّى ٢ (يسمّي)

to name

To give someone or something a name.

sanad al-Hadiith سند الحديث

hadeeth chain of authority

Chain of transmitters or narrators of a prophetic tradition, which should normally go back to a witnessing companion of the Prophet (PBUH).

Sanam (pl. aSnaam)

صنم (أصنام)

idol

Idol used for worship by idolators.

saqar سقر

Hell

Another name for Hell-fire.

sariyyah 1 (pl. saraayaa)

سريّة ١ (سرايا)

military expedition

In Islamic history, the term was used to refer to an expedition sent by the Prophet (PBUH); therefore, he was not part of it.

sariyyah 2 (pl.saraayaa)

سريّة ٢ (سرايا)

concubine

A slave girl treated as a wife by her master. So the relationship is a legal one, because her children will be legitimate children.

sarraa' (as--) waD-Darraa' السرّاء والضرّاء

ease and difficulty
The expression "fi as-sarraa' waD-Darraa'" means 'under all circumstances'.

satr al-'awrah ستر العورة

covering the private parts
Covering the parts that have to be covered by a Muslim man or woman in the presence of strangers or when performing the formal prayers. (See "'awrah").

Sawm صوم

fasting
In Islam, fasting means complete abstention from food, drinks and sexual intercourse from pre-dawn time (about 2 hours before sunrise) until sunset.

Sawm at-taTawwu' صوم التّطوّع

voluntary fasting
Fasting days other than those of Ramadhan on a voluntary basis. For a married woman, permission from husband may be required since this means that he could not have sex with her during daytime.

sa'y سعي

walking
Walking between the Mounts of Safa and Marwah (seven times) as a part of 'umrah and pilgrimage rituals. Walking in each direction is counted one.

Sayd al-baHr صَيد البحر

catch of the sea
Any animal caught from water. The ruling is that catches are permissible to eat for a pilgrim in a state of "iHraam", who is also allowed to fish.

Sayd al-barr صيد البر

hunting game

An animal caught by hunting. It is forbidden for a pilgrim in a state of "iHraam" to hunt animals. If he does, then he has to offer a similar animal for sacrifice in Makkah or feed some poor people or fast a few days. (See the Qur'an, 5: 95).

sayf allaah سيف الله

the Sword of Allah

This is a title given to the military genius and companion of the Prophet Muhammad (PBUH), Khalid ibn al-Waleed who was responsible for many victories against the Byzantines and others. This title was given to him by the Prophet (PBUH).

sayyi'ah (pl. sayyi'aat) سيّئة (سيّئات)

sin, demerit

Sayyi'ah (opposite of "Hasanah") often means what one earns by doing something wrong (committing a sin). According to the hadeeth, if one does one thing wrong he will receive one 'demirit', but if he intends to do it and restrains himself he will be rewarded.

shaafi'iyy شـــافعي (شوافع)

Shafi'i

A follower of Imam al-Shafi'iyy, the leader of one of the four major schools of Islamic law, which is common in South Arabia, Egypt and South East Asia.

shaahid (pl. shuhuud) شـــهود (شاهد)

witness

Someone who sees or has seen something or testifies to it.

shaari' (ash--) الشّـــارع

The Legislator

The legislator in Islam is Allah and, by implication, His messenger.

shaarib al-khamr شارب الخمر

drinker of alcoholic beverage
See "khamr" and "shurb al-khamr".

sha'baan شـــعبان

Sha'ban
The eighth month of the Islamic calendar, which precedes Ramadan.

shaf' شـــفع

shaf' prayer
Technically, this refers to the two rak'ahs one prays before the "witr" (odd number) prayer at night.

shafaa'ah شـــفاعة

intercession
Interceding on behalf of somebody with someone in authority.

shafaa'ah (ash--) al-kubraa الشّـــفاعة الكبرى

The Greatest Intercession
The intercession that will be performed by the Prophet Muhammad (PBUH) on the Day of Resurrection on behalf of all mankind, when all the other prophets excuse themselves of doing it.

shafaq شَفَق

evening glow / twilight
The soft light (normally reddish) one sees in the sky after sunset. The time of ""ishaa'" prayer starts with the total disappearance of this evening twilight.

shafii' شفيع

intercessor, intercessionary
Someone who intercedes on behalf of others.

shahaadah (ash--) الشّهادة

the Shahadah
The declaration that one bears witness that there is no deity except Allah (and that Muhammad {PBUH}is His messenger). Sometimes, it is called "kalimat ash-shahaadah" or "ash-shahaadataan" (the two testimonies').

shahaadah شهادة

testifying

Offering testimony to something.

shahaadat az-zuur شهادة الزّور

false testimony

False testimony is considered one of the major sins; it violates the Qur'anic teachings on justice and fairness, which emphasize telling the truth even if it is against oneself and nearest of kins. (See the Qur'an, 4: 135) The Prophet (PBUH) strongly warned against it.

shahaadataan (ash--)

الشّهادتان

the two testimonies

Testifying that (1) there is no deity except Allah and (2) that Muhammad is the messenger of Allah.

shahiid (ash--) الشّهيد

The Ever-Witnessing

A Divine Attribute of Allah. The One Who witnesses His creatures' actions and deeds.

shahiid (pl. shuhadaa')

شهيد (شهداء)

martyr

Someone who dies for the Cause of Islam. The term is extended in the prophetic traditions to include victims of natural disasters and people who die while defending their honour or possessions. (For the status of the first category, see the Qur'an, 3: 169-171).

shahr (ash--) al-Haraam (pl. al-ashhur al-Hurum)

الشّهر الحرام (الأشهُر الحرُم)

the sacred month

The months during which Muslims were not supposed to initiate fighting: Dhul-Qi'dah, Dhul-Hijjah, Muharram and Rajab (11th, 12th, 1st and 7th months of the Islamic calendar).

sha‘iirah (pl. sha‘aa'ir)

شعيرة (شعائر)

rite

A religious rite or ritual.

shakuur (ash--) الشّكور

The Ever-Thankful

A Divine Attribute of Allah. The One Who accepts the minimum of good deeds from His servants and rewards them generously for these deeds.

shar‘ (ash--) الشّرع

shari‘ah

Islamic law.

shar‘iyy شرعيّ

legal

According to "sharii‘ah" (Islamic law).

shara‘a (yashra‘)

شرع (يشرع)

to legislate, ordain

To issue a command or make a law.

sharii‘ah (pl. sharaa'i‘)

شريعة (شرائع)

shari‘ah

Body of the canonical law of Islam.

shariik (pl. shurakaa')

شريك (شركاء)

partner

Someone, for example, worshipped with Allah. From this comes the words "shirk" (taking partners / polytheism).

sharr [1] (pl. shuruur)

شرّ ١ (شرور)

evil

Something bad and forbidden by the religion.

sharr [2] شرّ ٢

worse

sharT [1] (pl. shuruuT)

شرط ١ (شروط)

requirement, prerequisite

Something that is necessary, for example, for the validity of certain deeds.

sharT [2] (pl. shuruuT) شرط ٢ (شروط)

condition, term
Something agreed upon in a contract.

shawwaal شوّال

Shawwal
The tenth month of the Islamic calendar.The first day of the month is "'iid al-fiTr" (The Feast of Breaking the Fast).

shaykh شيخ

sheikh
Relgious scholar. Originally, the word means an elderly man, but in modern religious literature it is often used to refer to a religious scholar. There are other uses for the word as well.

shayTaan (ash--) الشّيطان

Satan
The Evil One who was cursed by the Almighty Allah for his rebellion against Him, and who has determined to lead astray everyone he can and to make people do evil things.

shighaar (nikaaH ash--) الشّغار (نكاح--)

mutual marriage arrangement
See "nikaaH ashshighar".

shii'iyy (pl. ash-shii'ah) شيعيّ (شيعة)

Shi'ite
A believer in the doctorine that the fourth Righteous Caliph, Ali ibn Abi Talib, was supposed to be the first Caliph (successor to the Prophet Muahmmad (PBUH)), rather than Abu Bakr, who was chosen by the Muslim Community at the time.

shirk شرك

taking partners, polytheism
The act of worshipping someone or something besides Allah.

shirk akbar شرك أكبر

major polytheism

Worshipping others with Allah. This includes praying to 'saints' and other dead men of piety, with the belief that they may intercede for the worshipper. Islam does not recognize the principle of intermediaries between Allah and His servants. A Muslim can, naturally, ask a living pious man to pray for him / her.

shirk al-'aadah شرك العادة

polytheism of customs

The keeping up of un-Islamic superstitious customs, such as belief in charms and bad omens.

shirk al-'ibaadah شرك العبادة

polytheism in worship

Worshipping others besides Allah, such as praying to the graves or shrines of 'saints' or seeking help from the dead, regardless of their identity pr position with Allah, including the Prophet Muhammad (PBUH).

shirk al-'ilm شرك العلم

polytheism of knowledge

The claim that some people, such as prophets, imams or holy men have knowledge of "ghayb" (the unseen) of their own. For even the prophets would not know anything of the unseen unless they are informed of it by Allah. For the Qur'an is very specific on the fact that "with Him are the keys of "al-ghayb" (the unseen). None but Him knows them..." (the Qur'an 6:59)

shirk aSghar شرك أصغر

minor polytheism

This means taking partners with Allah in an indirect way, such as swearing to someone other than Allah or doing pious deeds to gain people's admiration, rather than for the sake of Allah alone.

shirk at-taSarruf شرك التّصرّف

polytheism of disposal

Ascribing power to others besides Allah or claiming that there are beings who share the power of the disposal of affairs with Allah.

shirk khafiyy شرك خفي

hidden polytheism

An act which involves taking partners with Allah, without a Muslim realizing it, such as swearing to others besides Allah or doing righteous deeds to be praised by people, rather than seeking Divine pleasure.

shu'ayb شعَيب

Shu'aib

A prophet of Allah mentioned in the Qur'an (See 11: 84-95).

shubhah (pl. shubuhaat)

شبهة (شُبُهات)

suspicion, suspicious case

Sometimes, the term is used to mean allegation or misconception.

shuf'ah شفعة

preemption

The priority to purchase a property, usually given to the neighbour.

shurb al-khamr شُرب الخمر

drinking an alcoholic beverage

See "khamr". Flogging is the usual penalty for drinking in Islam.

shuuraa شــورى

consultation

Consultation is an important institution in Islamic government. (See the Qur'an, 42: 38).

Siddiiq (aS--) الصدّيق

the trusting friend

The reference is to Abu-Bakr, the Prophet's closest friend, because he always showed unflinching trust in the Prophet (PBUH) and in his words.

Sidq [1] صدق ١

truth

As opposed to falsehood.

Sidq [2] صدق ٢

truthfulness

Telling the truth.

sidrat al-muntahaa

سدرة المنتهى

Lote-tree of the Boundary

The tree next to the Divine Throne beyond which no angel could go. Reference to this tree is given in the Qur'an, Chapter 53: verses 14 and 15, in the context where the Qur'an speaks about the Ascension of the Prophet (PBUH) to heaven, known as "al-Mi'raaj".

sifaaH سِفاح

fornication, extra marital

A child whose father is unknown is sometimes called "ibn sifaaH" (child born out of wedlock).

SiHaaH (aS--) as-sittah [1]

الصّحاح السّتة ١

the six authentic books

The term is used for the best known compilations of the "aHaadiith" (traditions) of the Prophet Muhammad (PBUH): al-Bukhari,Muslim, atTirmidhi, an-Nasaa'iy, ibn Maajah, abu Dawood, and ibn Hanbal.

SiHaaH (aS--) as-sittah [2]

الصّحاح السّتة ٢

The Six Sound Books

The six books of hadeeth compiled by leading scholars. These imams are: al-Bukhaarii, Muslim, Abuu Daawuud, al-Nasaa'ii, at-Tirmidhii, Ibn Maajah.

SiHaaq سِحَاق

lesbian sex act

Sexual act between females. This is strongly condemned in Islam, and it is considered a major sin.

SiHHah صحّة

authenticity, soundness

In the science of hadeeth terminology this means whether a certain hadeeth is authentic or not.

siHr سـحر

sorcery, witchcraft

Black magic in which the sorcerer usually resorts to help from evil jinn to do mischievous things to people and to perform various types of tricks and unusual feats. Sorcery is forbidden by Islam.

siirah (as--) an-nabawiyyah السّـيرة النّبويّة

biography of the Prophet

Life story of the Prophet Muhammad (PBUH), which should not be confused with the "Hadiith" (prophetic traditions).

Silat ar-raHim / al-'arHaam صِلة الرّحِم / الأرحام

goodness to relatives

Being good to one's relations on both the father's and the mother's side. Literally, "raHim" means the womb.

sinn al-buluugh سِن البلوغ

age of puberty

See "buluugh".

sinn ar-rushd سِن الرُّشد

age of maturation

The age at which one is considered mentally mature.

sinn at-takliif سِن التّكليف

age of accountability

The age at which a person becomes legally and religiously accountable. Normally, this is also "sinn al-buluugh" (age of puberty).

sinn at-tamyiiz سِن التّمييز

age of discrimination

Another term for age of maturation.

siqaayah سقاية

providing water

This used to refer especially to the practice of providing water to the pilgrims by the Makkahns.

SiraaT (aS--) al-mustaqiim الصّراط المستقيم

The Straight Path

The right way that leads to Divine Pleasure.

SiraaT (aS--) الصّراط

The Narrow Bridge

The bridge over Hell-fire which everyone has to cross after the Judgment. Depending on one's beliefs and deeds, some cross it swiftly, others slowly. Still others do not make it, and they fall into the fire.

sirriyyah (Salaah --) سرّيّة (صلاة...)

secret prayer

The term refers to the two prayers performed during the day: Zuhr (noon) and ‘aSr (late afternoon). The word ‘secret’ means that the worshipper recites the Qur'an in a manner not heard by others.

siwaak سـواك

tooth brushing

Brushing the teeth, usually with a “miswaak”, which is the Islamic forerunner of tooth brushes. (See “miswaak”).

Siyaam صيام

fasting

See “Sawm”

Siyaam ad-dahr صيام الدّهر

continuous fast

Observing the fast every day of the year; i.e. , one fasts during the day and breaks the fast at night every day.

Siyaam daawuud صيام داوود

David's fasting

The manner in which the Prophet Daawuud (David) (PBUH) used to fast: fasting alternative days all the time.

Siyaanat al-‘irD صيانة العرض

protecting one's honour

Protecting one's honour is

equal to protecting one's own life; whoever kills an aggressor in a fight to protect his honour it is considered a case of self-defence.

su'aal سُـؤال

questioning

Very often this connotes some form of interrogation

subHaan-allaah سُـبحان الله

Glorified be Allah!

Roughly equivalent to "hallelujah / alleluia". Synonymous to this is "subHaana rabbii" (Glorified be my Lord!)

subHaanahu wa ta'aalaa

سُـبحانه وتعالى

Glorified be He and exalted

An expression commonly used after the mention of the word Allah as a sign of reverence.

subHaanak-allaahumma

سُـبحانك اللهم

Glorified are You my Lord

subHah (pl. subaH)

سُـبحة (سُبَـح)

prayer beads

String of beads, normally of 33 or 99 beads, used by Muslims to count the number of certain prayers, such as "subHaan-allaah", "al-Hamdu li-llaah" and "allaahu akbar". It is sunnah to say each 33 times, especially after regular "Salaah". Then say: "laa ilaaha ill-allaah" to make it 100.

sufuur سُـفور

unveiling

Usually, a female's unveiling especially her face and head or ignoring the rules of Islamic dress in general. This is usally contrasted with 'Hijaab'.

suHt (pl. asHaat)

سُـحت (أسحات)

illicit gain

Something that one gains through illegal means.

SuHuf (sg. SaHiifah)
صُحُف (صحيفة)

Holy Books or Writs, records
In the Qur'an (Chapter 87: 18-19) this term refers to books revealed to messengers of Allah.

suHuur سُحُور

predawn meal
The meal a Muslim takes before dawn when he intends to fast that day. It is recommended that one delay it as much as possible. This would lighten the burden of the fast for him.

sujjaadah (pl. sajaajiid)
سجّادة (سجاجيد)

prayer rug
A rug often used by Muslims to pray on, usually as a precaution that the spot of prayer is ritually clean ("Taahir"). Naturally, one could pray on anything, including bare floor or ground, as long as he knows it is ritually clean.

sujuud سُجود

prostration
The act of prostrating. In Islam, this is done in the following manner: one kneels on his knees, puts his face on the floor (forehead and nose), while supporting his body on the hands which are placed almost parallel to the head, with the palms down. The elbows are raised from the floor.

sujuud as-sahw سجود السّهو

prostration for forgetting
Two prostrations made just before the end of the "Salaah" when one makes certain mistakes during his prayer.

sujuud ash-shukr
سجود الشّكر

gratitude prostration
The prostration one makes upon receiving good news, for example, to show gratitude to Allah.

sukr سُكْر

intoxication

The condition of being intoxicated, usually by drinking an alcoholic beverage.

sulaymaan سُليمان

Solomon

The Prophet Solomon (PBUH), who was also a king endowed by Allah with many special powers. (See, e.g., the Qur'an, 21: 81-82 and 27:16-44, where his story with the Queen of Sheba is told).

SulH al-Hudaybiyyah صلح الحديبيّة

The Truce of Hudaybiyah

The agreement or pact (of reconciliation) made between the Prophet (PBUH) and the Makkahns at Hudaybiyah near Makkah in the sixth year of Hijra.

sulTaan سُلطان

authority

Authority or control over somebody. It is this sense that we often see this word in the Qur'an.

sulTaan (pl. salaaTiin) سُلطان (سلاطين)

sultan

Lexically, "sulTaan" means 'authority'. The word in the sense of 'ruler' is probably short for "SaaHib as-sulTaan" (the person who has the authority).

sunan سُنَن

hadeeth collections

The word sunan is the plural of "sunnah". It is used in that general sense. But technically, it has been used to refer to particular books or collections of Prophetic traditions compiled by certain scholars. Typicallly, the book is arranged

according to the topics of "fiqh" : purification, prayer, fasting, transactions....

sunan abii daawuud

سُـــنن أبي داود

Abu Dawood Hadeeth Collection

The "Hadiith" collection compiled by Iamam Abu Dawood as-Sajistani (275 A.H.). See "sunan".

sunan an-nasaa'iyy

سُـــنن النّسائي

Al-Nasa'i Hadeeth Collection

The "Hadiith" collection compiled by Imam Abu Abdur-Rahman an-Nasa'i (303 A.H.).

sunan at-tirmidhiyy

سُـــنن التّرمذي

Tirmidhi Hadeeth Collection

The "Hadiith" collection compiled by Imam Abu 'Isa Muhammad at-Tirmidhi (279 A.H.).

sunan ibn maajah

سُـــنن ابن ماجة

Ibn Majah Collection of Hadeeth

The "Hadiith" collection compiled by Imam Abu Abdillah Muhammad ibn Majah (273 A.H.).

sunnah (as--) السُّـــنّة

sunnah

Practice of the Prophet Muhammad (PBUH). Sometimes, the term is used to mean all his teachings. Alternative terms are "as-sunnah an-nabawiyyah".

sunnah (pl. sunan)

سُنّة (سُنَن)

way, practice

Way or practice in general.

sunnah fi'liyyah سُـــنّة فعليّة

practical tradition

This refers to the practices and deeds of the Prophet Muhammad (PBUH).

sunnah mu'akkadah سُــنّة مؤكّدة

emphasized sunnah

A practice of the Prophet (PBUH) that was emphasized by him, through his meticulous observance of doing it.

sunnah qawliyyah سنّة قوليّة

verbal tradition

The refers to the sayings of the Prophet (PBUH).

sunnah raatibah (pl. sunan rawaatib) سُــنّة راتبة (سُنَن رَوَاتب)

regular sunnah prayer

The sunnah prayer which is regularly observed before and/or after the obligatory five daily prayers: two "rak'ahs" before "fajr", two or four before "Zuhr" and two after it, four before "'aSr", two after "maghrib" and two after "'ishaa'".

sunnah taqriiriyyah سُــنّة تقريريّة

reported tradition

This refers to the reports on the reactions of the Prophet (PBUH) to something said or done in his presence, such as indicating approval or disapproval.

sunniyy سُــنّي

Sunni

A member of the majority of Muslims who agree, among other things, that Abu Bakr, Omar, Othman (RAA) were as legitimate successors to the Prophet (PBUH) as Ali (RAA), and in that order, since they were all elected by the Muslim Community.

surrah سُــرّة

navel

The navel is considered the upper boundary of the 'private parts'. For example, for men 'decency' requires

covering the parts from the navel to the knees. This is the minimum for him to cover before parying, for example.

sutrat al-muSallii

سُترة المصلّي

worshipper's barrier

Anything that is made to stand in front of a worshipper so that people do no walk directly in front of him. It could be a wall, a pillar or simply a portable object of reasonable height (one foot high, for example).

Suufiyy (pl. Suufiyyah)

صوفي (صوفيّة)

Sufi

Originally, a person who lives an ascetic life of devotions seeking spiritual purification. But often, this refers to a member of a Sufi order.

Suufiyyah (aS--) الصّوفيّة

Sufism

See "Suufiyy".

Suur (aS--) الصّور

the Trumpet

The Trumpet which is blown (for the second time) to announce the Rresurrection. (See the Qur'an 6:73; 18:99; 20:102; ...).

suurah (pl. suwar)

سُورة (سُوَر)

chapter

Chapter of the Qur'an, which comprises 114 chapters. All the chapters of the Qur'an, with the exception of 9, begin with "basmalah".

T

Taa'ah (pl. Taa'aat)
طاعة (طاعات)

good deed
Literally, this means 'obdience'. Here it refers to deeds that are done in obedience to Allah's commands.

ta'abbudiyy تعبُّدي

ritual, by Divine command
Something a Muslim does because he has been so commanded by his religion.

taabi' at-taabi'iin تابع التّابعين

follower of the Followers
This refers to the third generation of Muslims, the Companions of the Prophet Muhammad (PBUH) being the first generation.

taabi'iyy تابعيّ

second generation Muslim
This refers to a Muslim who came in contact with a companion of the Prophet Muhamad (PBUH), most probably being born after the death of the Prophet or near that time.

taabuut (pl. tawaabiit)
تابوت (توابيت)

ark of the covenant
See the Qur'an 2:248.

ta'addud al-zawjaat
تعدّد الزّوجات

polygyny
The practice of having more than one wife at the same time. Some people mistakingly use 'polygamy' which can mean having more than one wife or husband.

Taafa (yaTuuf) طاف (يطوف)

circumambulate
To go around the Ka'ba. Circumambulating the Ka'bah seven times is considered an act of worship, like the "Sallaah" in the sense that one should be ritually pure.

Taaghuut (pl Tawaaghiit)
طاغوت (طواغيت)

false deity
Anyone who is worshipped

besides Allah. A despotic tyrant is also sometimes called Taaghuut.

Taahir طاهر

immaculate, ritually pure,

A person is ritually pure if he fulfills certain requirements, such as not having any urine, stool, or blood on his body or not being in a state that requires "ghusl", for example. The term applies to things as well, such as clothings or a place, which is a prerequisite for performing "Salaah" in or on them.

taa'ib تائب

repentant

A repenting person. See "tawbah" (repentance).

ta'alaa-llaah تعالى الله

Allah be exalted!

A common expression Muslims use after the word Allah is "subHaanahu wa-ta'aalaa" ('May He be glorified and exalted') as a sign of reverence.

Taalib (pl. Talabah) al-'ilm طالب (طلبة) العلم

seeker of knowledge

Often, a student of religious knowledge.

Taaluut طالوت

Saul

The king chosen by Allah for the Israelites to fight Goliath. (See the Qur'an 2: 241-251.)

taarik al-Salaah تارك الصّلاة

neglector of prayer

Someone who does not perform the (five) daily prayers. Naturally, this violates one of the five corner-stones of Islam.

ta'awwadha (yata'awwadh) تعوّذ (يتعوّذ)

seek refuge (with Allah)

See "ta'awwudh".

ta'awwudh تعوُّذ

seeking refuge

Generally, this means seeking refuge with Allah. A common prayer is "a'uudhu bi-llaahi min al-shayTaan al-rajim" ('I seek refuge with Allah from Satan the accursed one.')

tabaaraka-llaah تبارك الله

Hallowed / Blessed is Allah

This expression is often used to express admiration for something. In general use, it means something like 'Allah bless!'

tabannaa (yatabnnaa) تبنّى (يتبنّى)

adopt

See "al-tabannii."

tabannii (al--) التبنّي

adoption

Adopting someone to be one's child, to carry his name and be treated like a natural son or daughter is not permissible in Islam. (See the Qur'an 33:4-5). However, kindness to orphans is strongly recommended.

tabarrajat (tatabarraj) تبرّجت (تتبرّج)

display finery or beauty

See "tabarruj".

tabarruj تبرُّج

display of finery or beauty

Technically, this means showing any part of the woman's body (except the face and hands) and her ornaments to 'strangers' (marriageable males) and wearing make up or perfumes in public.

tabarruk تبرك

seeking blessings

Doing something to gain blessings from someone or something.

tabattala (yatabattalu) تبتّل (يتبتّل)

To be pious and chaste.

To retire from the world and devote one's life to the worship of Allah.

tabattul تبتُّل

devotion to Allah

Retiring from the world and devoting one's life to Allah.

tabdhiir تبذير

extravagance

Squandering one's money or possessions is forbidden in Islam, because these gifts from Allah should be properly made use of for the

benefit of the individual and society. (See the Qur'an 17:26-7)

tabii' (pl. tibaa') تبيع (تباع)

one year calf

A male calf that has completed one year of age.

tabliigh تبليغ

conveying (a message)

Another word of the same root is balaagh which has the same meaning.

taDarra'a (yataDarra') تضرّع (يتضرّع)

to supplicate in humility

To pray in a humble and earnest manner.

taDarru' تضرُّع

humble supplication

Praying in a humble and earnest manner.

tadbiir ar-raqiiq تدبير الرقيق

posthumous manumission

The decision to set a slave free upon master's death.

tadwiir تدوير

normal recitation

Reciting the Qur'an at average rate of speed, while observing all the rules of correct enunciation ("tajwiid").

tafaqquh fii al-diin تفقُّه في الدين

learning the religion

The act of studying to learn and understand religious matters.

tafkhiim تفخيم

velarization

The raising of the back part of the tongue towards the roof of the mouth while pronouncing certain consonants like the Saad and Taa' (always) as well as the l and r (sometimes).

tafsiir تفسير

exegesis, interpretation

Explaining the meaning of Qur'anic text and /or commenting on it.

taghriib تغريب

exile, banishment

Banishing someone who commits certain crimes to a distant land.

Tahaarah طهارة

ritual purity or cleanliness

The state in which one can pray and touch the Qur'an.

tahajjud تهجّد

late night prayer

This is short for "Salaat al-tahajjud" which is the optional prayer one performs in the depth of night.

taHallul تحلّل

freedom from iHraam

Doing something (like cutting the hair or shaving the head) at the end of Hajj or ‘umrah to indicate finalization of the state of "iHraam". After that a person may do things which are forbidden for a person in a state of "iHraam'.

taHannuth تحنّث

devoting time to worship

A process of devoting oneself to worshipping Allah and seeking religious purification.

taHiyyaat (al--) التحيّات

salutations prayer

The prayer which starts "al-taHiyyaatu li-llaahi ..." ('Salutations to Allah...') which a Muslim says in his Salaah in the sitting position after two or four "rak‘as". (See "al-tashahhud".)

taHliil تحليل

permitting, making lawful

Making or considering something permissible or lawful.

taHmiid تحميد

saying "al-Hamdu li-llaah"

taHqiiq تحقيق

deliberate recitation

Fairly slow and deliberate recitation of the Qur'an, observing all the rules of correct enunciation. Usually, this is done in teaching situations. (See also “tilaawah".)

taHriif تحريف

distortion of meaning

Misinterpretation of a text or word.

taHriim تحريم

forbidding

Making or considering something unlawful.

taHriim bi-lmuSahara تحريم بالمصاهرة

ban due to marriage

Ban on marrying certain in-laws, such as mother and daughter in-law or two sisters at the same time. (See the Qur'an 4: 23.)

taHriim bi-nnasab تحريم بالنّسب

ban due to lineage

The ban on marrying ceratin blood relatives, such as sisters and their daughters and aunts… (See the Qur'an 4: 23.)

taHriim bi-rraDaa' تحريم بالرّضاع

ban due to suckling

This term is used in the context of deciding marriageable persons in Islamic law. According to Islamic law, a Muslim cannot marry someone who shared suckling from the same woman at 5 times. (See the Qur'an 4: 23.)

taHriir raqabah تحرير رقبة

manumission of a slave

Setting a slave free is one of the highly recommended acts of devotion.

Tahuur طَهور

ritually purifying

Clean water is normally ritually purifying. Other liquids, like juices for example, may be clean and pure in themselves, but they are not ritually purifying; they cannot be used for ablution, for example.

tajarrud تجرُّد

divesting oneself

Divesting oneself physically in the sense of removing his ordinary clothes, for example, and mentally in the sense of paying no attention to worldly gains and affairs.

tajawwuz fii al-Salaah تجوُّز في الصلاة

hurrying in prayer
This means that a person recites and performs the minimum requirements of proper Salaah, without violating the condition of properness, or reading short chapters of the Qur'an, usually for an urgent reason.

tajmiir تجمير

aromatizing a shroud
Using insence or the like to give a shroud of a dead person good smell.

tajwiid تجويد

perfecting
This word comes from "jawwad" which means to make "jayyid" (good). As a term it has been used to refer to the meticulous enunciation of Qur'anic words or recitation of the Qur'an. It also refers to the science which deals with the rules and methods to be observed in its recitation.

takbiir تكبير

saying "allaahu akbar"
Saying what is equivalent to "Allah is Greater or the Greatest'.

takbiirat al-iHraam تكبيرة الإحرام

initial takbiir
Saying "allaahu akbar" at the beginning of the "Salaah", raising the palms just in front of the shoulder, with the palms facing forward.

takfiin تكفين

enshrouding the corps
Wrapping the corps of a dead person in clean sheets of cloth after washing the body. It is also recommended to scent the body and the shroud with perfume.

takhliil تخليل

passing the fingures through
In the context of ablution, this means passing wet fingers through the beard (al-liHyah) and the toes (al-'aSaabi‘) to make sure that water reaches the different parts.

takyiif تكيّف

qualifying

In theology, this refers to qualifying an attribute or act of Allah by indicating its "howness", which is considered a blasphemy.

Talaaq طلاق

divorce

Divorce in Islam is considered a necessary evil or a last resort, when the husband and wife try everything, including arbitration, to get along. The divorce is done by the man declaring his wife divorced. There is a chance of reconciliation after each of the first and second times, without any formal procedures, provided that it is done within three menstrual periods of the wife after the divorce. The wife should stay in the home during this period, which makes it more conducive to a quiet reconciliation.

Talaaq al-bid'ah طلاق البدعة

improper divorce

Divorce that is done in violation of "sunnah", such as divorcing the wife more than once within one cycle of her menstruation. See "Talaaq as-sunnah".

Talaaq as-sunnah طلاق السنّة

Proper divorce

Divorcing the wife in accordance with the teachings of the Prophet (PBUH): (1) It should be during a menstruation cycle (between two periods) while she is free from bleeding and provided he did not have sex with her during that period. (2) No more than one divorce during any cycle.

Talaaq baa'in طلاق بائن

final divorce

The divorce after which a woman may not go back to her former husband, except with a new contract or unless she marries another man, consummates her marriage,

then gets separated by divorce or death from the second husband. (See "baynuunah kubraa" and "baynuunah Sughraa")

Talaaq raj'iyy طلاق رجعيّ

revocable divorce

The case in which a man and his divorced wife may return to each other without remarrying (a new marriage contract). This happens after the "first divorce" or "second divorce" before the passage of the waiting period, known as "'idddah").

talbiyah تلبية

saying, "labbayk allaahumma labbayk"

Saying the prayer that a piligrim should keep saying all the time: "labbayk allaahumma labbayk..." ('I am obeying Your command my Lord...'

talmuud تلمود

Talmud

The primary source of Jewish law.

Talqah 'uulaa طلقة أولى

first divorce

Divorcing the wife for the first time, which is considered a revocable divorce.

Talqah (pl. Talqaat) طلقة (طلقات)

divorce once

A Muslim is allowed divorce three times. After either of the first two times the wife and husband can go back to each other within a three (menstrual) periods. (See "Talqah raj'iyyah" and "Talaaq baa'in").

Talqah thaalithah طلقة ثالثة

third divorce

This is the third time a man divorces his wife, which is considered final. They may not return to each other except after her marrying another man, consummating the marriage, then getting separated from the second husband by divorce or death. Naturally, a new marriage contract is required.

Talqah thaaniyah طلقة ثانية

second divorce

Divorcing the wife for the second time, which means that the man takes back his wife after divorcing her the first time during the waiting period ("'iddah"), then divorces her again. It is considered "revocable divorce".

talqiin al-mayyit تلقين الميّت

prompting the dying person

The word "mayyit" could mean either one who is dying or is dead. When we see a Muslim dying we should prompt him/ her to say the "shahaadah" ("I bear witness that there is no deity except Allah and that Muhamad is the messenger of Allahl").

tamiimah (pl. tamaa'im) تميمة (تمائم)

talisman, amulet

Something one keeps and usually wears for protection against evil spirits for example. Islam forbids this, because true protection is provided by Allah Alone. One may read verses of the Qur'an (e.g. 2:255; Chapters 113&114) for that purpose.

tamjiid تمجيد

glorification

Though the word means glorification in general, it is often used in the context of glorifying Allah and praising Him.

Tamth (al--) الطّمث

menstruation

Regular monthly vaginal bleeding.

tamthiil تمثيل

comparing, likening

In theology, this means comparing the acts and attributes of Allah with those of humans, which is considered a blasphemy, since the Qur'an tells us that "There is nothing like unto Him."

tanwiin تنوين

nunation

The pronunciation of an n after the last vowel in an

idefinite noun in Arabic, such as kitaab(un) 'a book'. In Arabic this is indicated by doubling the short vowel diacritic mark (e.g. كتاباً).

tanziih تنـــزيه

deanthropomorphism

This means that we should not ascribe any human qualification to the Divine attributes of Allah, because "There is nothing like unto Him." (The Qur'an, 42:11).

taqarrub ilaa allaah تقرُّب إلى الله

seeking Divine Pleasure

Doing something good in order to please Allah and be closer to Him.

taqiyyah (al--) التقيّة

concealing identity

A Shi'ite principle of behaving in a manner acceptable to others in order to conceal one's true identity.

taqliid (al--) التّقليد

imitation, emulation

In religious terms, this means following the views and /or practices of a certain imam or school of thought.

taqSiir al-sha'r تقصير الشعر

shortening the hair

Cutting some hair from various parts of the head for men and cutting about 2 centimeters from a woman's hair at the end of "'umrah" or main rituals of "Hajj".

taqwaa تقوى

Allah-fearing

The Arabic term covers many concepts that include Allah-fearing, righteousness and piety.

taraawiiH تراويح

taraweeh prayers

See "Salaat at-taraawiiH".

taraHHum ترحُّـــم

praying for mercy for s.o.

Often, this can be in the form of "May Allah have mercy on X."

Tariiqah Suufiyyah طريقة صوفيّة

Sufi order

An order is very often named

after its leader, such as Naqshabandiyyah, Tiijaaniyyah…etc.

tarjii' ترجيع

saying: innaa lillaahi wa innaaa

Saying the expression which means 'To Allah we surely belong, and to Him we shall return,' usually, upon receiving bad news or meeting an unfortunate incident.

tark al-Salaah ترك الصّلاة

neglecting formal prayers

Not performing the obligatory five daily prayers. This act is considered an act of disbelief by the Prophet (PBUH).

tarqiiq ترقيق

unvelarization

Pronouncing a consonant, especially the r and l, without raising the back of the tongue. It is the opposite of "tafkhiim" ('velarization').

tartiil ترتيل

recitation, reading

Usually, this refers to reciting or reading the Qur'an in a slow and deliberate manner, observing all the rules of correct enunciation ("tajwiid") while contemplating the meanings of the verses.

taSaddaqa (yataSaddaq) تصدّق (يتصدّق)

give out charity

See "taSadduq".

taSadduq تصدُّق

giving charity

Doing a charitable deed can be through giving out something, for example, or offering help to someone who needs it.

taSawwafa (yataSawwaf) تصوّف (يتصوّف)

become a sufi

See "taSawwuf".

taSawwuf تصوُّف

becoming sufi, Sufism

In general, this means living a simple life of devotions. But Sufism has taken many forms, some of which are considered objectionable by the orthodox Muslims.

tasbiiH تسبيح

glorification
Glorification of Allah. The usual expression is "subHaan-allaah" ('Glorified be Allah').

tashahhud [1] تشهُّد [1]

saying the "shahaadah"
Saying, "ashahadu an-laa ilaaha ill-allaah" ('I bear witness that there is no deity except Allah'). One may add, "wa ashhadu anna muHammadan rasuul-ullah" ("and I bear witness that Muahmmad is the messenger of Allah').

tashahhud [2] تشهُّد [2]

sitting prayers
The prayers one says in the sitting position during the Salaah (formal prayers). (See "al-taHIyyaat".)

tashbiih تشبيه

anthropomorphism
In theology this means attributing human qualities to Allah,or comparing Divine attributes and actions to human ones, which is a grave blasphemy. (See tanziih.)

tashmiit al-'aaTis
تشميت العاطس

responding to the sneezer
Saying "yarHamkum-alllaah" ('May Allah have mercy on you'" when a person sneezes and says: "al-Hamdu li-llaah" ('Thank Allah').

tashyii' al-janaazah
تشييع الجنازة

accompanying the funeral
Walking along or behind the bier and helping in carrying it. All these are strongly recommended acts for a Muslim to do for fellow Muslims.

tashyii' al-mayyit تشييع الميّت

escorting the deceased
Walking along or behind the bier and helping in carrying it. All these are strongly recommended acts for a Muslim to do for fellow Muslims.

tasliim [1] تسليم [1]

greeting
Saying, "assalaamu 'alaykum" ('Peace be with you') or something to that effect.

tasliim [2] **تسليم** [2]

surrendering

Surrendering something or someone to somebody.

tasmiyah (al--) **تسمية**

saying "bismi-llaah", naming

Saying the expression which means ' In the Name of Allah'. It also means giving s.o. or s.th. a name.

taswiyat al-Saff **تسوية الصّف**

straightening the line

In congregational worship this means making the lines/ rows straight, usually by making sure the feet and the shoulders of the worshippers are next to each other.

taTahhur **تطهُّر**

purification

Purifying oneself by removing impurities and making ablution or washing the body.

taTawwa'a (yataTawwa') **تطوّع (يتطوّع)**

to volunteer

taTawwu' **تطوُّع**

volunteering

Doing a voluntary act of worship, such as optional prayers or fasting.

taTayyub **تطيُّب**

wearing perfume

Prophet Muhammad used to like perfumes, and he encouraged his followers to wear them, especially before going to the mosque.

taTayyur **تطيُّر**

believing in bad omens

A Muslim is encouraged to have faith in Allah and believe in good omens ("al-fa'l al-Hasan"). He should not believe in bad omens or behave according to them. Another word is "Tiyarah".

ta'Tiil **تعطيل**

negation of attributes

In theology, this refers to the claim that we should negate all attributes from our concept of Allah.

ta'wiidhah (pl. ta'aawiidh) تعويذة (تعاويذ)

talisman, incantation

Something worn or recited over someone for protection against evil. In Islam one should seek only Divine help, not of amulets and charms, which have no power to help or protect anyone. (See "tamiimah".)

ta'wiil al-qur'aan تأويل القرآن

interpretation of the Qur'an

Technically, this often refers to unconventional interpretation of the Qur'an, as opposed to "tafsiir al-qur'aan".

Ta'wiil / ta'biir al-ru'yaa تأويل / تعبير الرؤيا

interpretation of dreams

This is one of sciences Muslims pioneered in. Usually, a Muslim scholar would resort to the Qur'an, hadeeth, conventions and other sources in interpreting the dreams.

Tawaaf طواف

Circumambulation

Going around the Ka'bah seven times, starting with the 'black stone' and ending there. "Tawaaf" is a highly recommended act of worship. Like "Salaah" one should not do it unless he is ritually pure.

Tawaaf al-ifaaDah طواف الإفاضة

IfaaDah circumambulation

The "Tawaaf" a pilgrim performs on the tenth day of the month of pilgrimage. It is an essential part of "Hajj". Another name for this is "Tawaaf al-ziyaarah".

Tawaaf al-quduum طواف القُدوم

Circumambulation of arrival

The "Tawaaf" the pilgrim performs upon arrival at Mecca.

Tawaaf al-widaa' طواف الوَداع

Farewell Circumambulation

The "Tawaaf" the pilgrim performs before leaving Mecca.

Tawaaf al-ziyaarah طواف الزّيارة

ziyaarah circumambulation

The "Tawaaf" a pilgrim performs normally on the tenth day of the month of pilgrimage.It is an essential part of "Hajj". Another name for this is "Tawaaf al-ifaaDah".

tawaDDa'a (yatawaDDa') توضّأ (يتوضّأ)

make ablution

See "wuDuu'".

tawakkala (yatwakkal) 'ala-llaah توكّل (يتوكّل) على الله

to trust in Allah

To depend on Allah and put one's trust in Him.

tawakkaltu 'ala-llaah توكّلت على الله

I trust in Allah

I am putting my trust in Allah and depending on Him. Sometimes, this expression and its alternative "tawakkalnaa 'ala-llaah" ('We trust in Allah') is said upon concluding a deal or making an agreement.

tawakkul توكُّل

trusting and depending

Normally, this refers to putting one's trust in Allah, and stop worrying.

tawallii al-qaDaa' تولّي القضاء

becoming a judge

To have the job of a judge.

tawarruk تورُّك

sitting on buttock

Sitting in the "Salaah" with left buttock touching the floor, while the right buttock rests on the right foot whose toes touch the floor.

tawassul توسُّل

entreaty, fervent plea

Normally, this is used with reference to praying to Allah, which should be direct, not through anyone.

tawbah توبة

repentance

See "tawbah naSuuH".

tawbah naSuuH توبة نصوح

sincere repentance

There are three conditions for sincere repentance: (1)stop

doing the wrong act, (2) regret having done it and seeking Divine forgiveness and (3) resolving not to repeat the wrong doing.

tawHiid توحيد

monotheism, Islamic theology

The belief in the absolute oneness of Allah and behaving accordingly in one's supplications and worship. Sometimes, the study of theological issues in Islam is called "tawHidd" or "'ilm al-tawHiid" ('science of monotheism')

tawHiid al-rubuubiyyah

توحيد الربوبية

monotheism of lordship

Belief that there is only One Lord and Sustainer of the whole creation.

tawHiid al-'uluuhiyyah

توحيد الألوهيّة

monotheism of deity

The belief that there is only One Allah Who is Unique. He has no partners, no wife or children, and none is equal to Him. (See the Qur'an,

Chapter 112)

tawHiid al-'ibaadah

توحيد العبادة

monotheism in worship

Devoting and directing worship to Allah alone, without intermediaries or partners.

tawqifiyy توقيفي

decided by the religion

Something that is not subject to debate and argument, because it has been decided by the religion in a command by Allah or instructions from His messenger.

tawraah توراة

Torah

The Book that was revealed to Prophet Moses. Some scholars say that it is the Mosaic Law or the Pentateuch.

tawwaab (al--) التوّاب

The Ever Relenting

An Attribute of Allah. The One Who constantly accepts the repentance of His servants.

tayaamun تيامُن

going rightward

Starting something with the right hand side (such as washing the right arm first or entering a mosque with the right foot first) or moving in that direction.

tayammum تيمُّم

wiping with dust

The symbolic act of wiping the face and the hands with light dust instead of ablution in the case of emergency, such as absence of water or its extreme rarity. It is also permissible for someone who cannot use water for some reason or another.

tayammun تيمُّن

seeking blessings

Considering something a source of blessings.

ta'ziir تعزير

discretionary punishment

Punishment the nature of which is not specified in Islamic law; therefore, it is left to the discretion of the judge or ruler.

ta'ziyah تعزية

offering condolences

Usually, this is used in terms of offering condolences for someone who had death in the family.

thabt (pl. thubuut) ثبت (ثُبوت)

reliable

In the context of evaluating the narrators of the Hadeeth, this refers to the fact that a narrator/ transmitter of the text is reliable, with a remarkably retentive memory.

thaqalaan (al--) الثّقلان

humans and jinnis

The term refers to the two main categories of responsible beings, the visible humans and the invisible beings known as jinn.

thawaab ثواب

reward

The opposite of "'iqaab" ('punishment').

tHayyab ثيّب

not virgin

A woman that was previously married. In some aspects of Islamic law she is treated differently from a virgin.

thiqah (pl. thiqaat) ثقة (ثقات)

trustworthy

With reference to a Hadeeth narrator, this means that he is trustworthy, due to his impeccable character.

thubuut al-shahr ثبوت الشهر

confirmation of the month

The official announcement regarding the beginning of the lunar month, such as Ramadhan.

Tiib (pl. Tuyuub) طيب (طيوب)

perfume

Perfumes were among the favourite things to the Prophet (PBUH).

tilaawah تلاوة

recitation, reading

Usually, this refers to the careful recitation or reading of the Qur'an.

Tiyarah طِيَرة

belief in bad omens

Islam is against believing in bad omens, because a Muslim should have faith in Allah.

Tuhr طُهر

freedom from menses

The time when a female is not menstruating.

Tuma'niinah طمأنينة

serenity, calmness

Peace and serenity. It is sometimes used to mean smooth movement, in a respectful manner, when we talk about performing formal prayers.

Tuubaa li... طوبى لـ . . . .

May Allah grant Paradise to

An expression of encouragement for people to do or undergo something. It is a form of prayer for them to earn Paradise if do or undergo what is specified.

Tuur (jabal aT--)

الطّور (جبل ---)

Mount Sinai

The mountain in Sinai which is mentioned in the Qur'an in the context of the story of Moses. (See the Qur'an, 23:20, e.g.)

Tuur siinaa' /siiniin

طور سيناء / سينين

Mount Sinai

Nowadays, it is called "jabal al-Tuur" in the Peninsula known as Seena to the North East of Egypt. It was around here that Moses received the ten commandments.

U

'ubuudiyyah عبوديّة

servitude, slavery

In religious terms, this is usually used to refer to the relationship of man to Allah. He is a slave and servant of His Lord Who is the Master of the Universe. This includes worshipping Him and obeying every command of His.

'uDHiyah (pl. 'aDaaHii)

أضحية (أضاحي)

animal offering, sacrifice

The animal offered for sacrifice especially during pilgrimage. This could be a goat (not less than one year old), a sheep (at least six months), a cow / ox , or a camel (both not less than two years old). A goat or sheep is offered for one pilgrim while a cow / ox and camel may be offered for seven people. For non-pilgrims, these animals are offered per family, not individual.

'udhr (pl. a'dhaar)

عُذر (أعذار)

excuse

Reason for not doing or observing a required act. Often, we hear the expression "'udhr shar'iyy" (legitimate excuse).

'uHSina (yuHSanu)

أحصِن (يُحصن)

got married

The verb in the passive form is used in the Qur'an to refer to marriage.

'ukhrawiyy أخروي

related to the Hereafter

Any matter related to "aakhirah" (life Hereafter).

'ukht min ar-raDaa'(ah)

أخت من الرّضاعة

foster-sister

We also read "ukht bir-riDaa'h". She is a female person who shared the suckling milk with another person of a different mother

and father . According to Islamic law she is considered like a natural sister from the point of view of marriage.

'uluu al-'azm أولو العزم

men of resolution

This term is used in the Qur'an to refer to certain messengers of Allah. According to some scholars, these are: Noah, Abraham, Moses and Jesus. But the term basically means people who are resolute, persistent and patient in carrying out their mission.

'uluu al-albaab أولو الألباب

men of understanding

Another translation of this term is 'men possessed of minds'.

'uluu al-amr أولو الأمر

authorities

People in charge of community affairs.

'uluu al-arHaam أولو الأرحام

relatives

Blood relatives of various degrees.

'uluuhiyyah ألوهيّة

divinity, Allahhood

Being a deity or Allah.

'umm al-kitaab [1] أم الكتاب [1]

the Opening Chapter

One of the meanings of this term is the Opening Chapter of the Qur'an, being the most important.

'umm al-kitaab [2] أم الكتاب [2]

the Preserved Tablet

See "al-lawH al-maHfuuZ".

'umm (pl. 'ummahaat) almu'miniin أم (أمهات) المؤمنين

mother of the believers

This term refers to any of the wives of the Prophet (PBUH). (See the Qur'an, 33: 6). They should be shown due respect, and a Muslim was not allowed to marry a former wife of the Prophet Muhammad (PBUH).

'umm al-quraa أم القرى

mother of towns (Makkah)

One of the names used for Makkah al-Mukarramah.

'umm al-walad أم الولد

Mother's child

In legal terms, this refers to a bondswoman who gives birth to a boy from her master. She automatically becomes free upon the master's death.

'ummah (pl. umam) أمّة (أمَم)

nation, community

'ummiyy أميّ

illiterate

Though the general meaning of the word is someone who cannot read or write. It is found in the Qur'an to mean both illiterate and non-Jew (gentile).

'umrah عمرة

lesser pilgrimage

Lesser pilgrimage means wearing the pilgrim's garb, making the "Tawaaf" around the Ka'bah and "sa'y" between Safa and Marwah any time of the year.

'umuur (sg. 'amr) أمور (أمر)

affairs, issues

Very often this word is found in the plural form to mean matters of all sorts.

'unnah عنّة

impotence

The male's inability to perform sexual intercourse. The wife has the right to seek divorce on this ground.

'uqdat an-nikaaH عقدة النكاح

marriage contract

'uquuq al-waalidayn عقوق الوالدين

disobedience to parents

Showing disrespect to parents and disobeying their commands, or mistreating them.

'urf (pl. 'a'raaf) عُرف (أعراف)

convention

Common practice by people in a certain community. In Islamic law, we often find

reference to these practices in the absence of clear legislation regarding certain practices or worldly duties. Naturally, these should not conflict with any injunctions of the religion.

'uruuD at-tijaarah

عروض التجارة

commodities

Things prepared for trade. There are special rules regarding the alms paid on them.

'uSaah (sg. 'aaS[in])

عصاة (عاصٍ)

sinners, rebellious people

See "'aaS(in)".

'uSuul (sg. 'aSl) 1

أصول (أصل) 1

principles

See "aSl ('uSuul) 1 ".

'uSuul ('aSl) 2 أصول (أصل) 2

lineage

See "aSl ('uSuul) 2 ".

'uSuul al-fiqh أصول الفقه

principles of jurisprudence

Literally, the term means 'origins of fiqh' (jurisprudence). It has been defined as the "science of Islamic jurisprudence, or the methodology deriving laws from the sources of Islam and of establishing their juristic or constitutional validity."

'uSuul al-Hadiith

أصول الحديث

principles of the hadeeth

The principles of hadeeth (traditions of the Prophet [PBUH]) authentication, such as methods of text verification and the critical evaluation of the narrators.

'uSuul at-tafsiir أصول التفسير

science of Qur'anic exegesis

This is the science which deals with the issues and rules to be observed in interpreting the Qur'an, such as full knowledge of the Qur'an and the Prophet's traditions, the Arabic language, history of

the revelation of different verses…et

'uswah Hasnah أسوة حسنة

exemplar model

The Prophet Muhammad (PBUH) is supposed to be the exemplar model for all Muslims. They should emulate his conduct. (See the Qur'an, 33: 21).

'uuqiyyah أوقيّة

ounce

There are two types of 'ounce' in traditional Islamic terms: one for silver (119.4 grams) and another for other types of substance (127 grams). Both should not be confused with the modern use of ounce (28.349 grams).

'uzayr عُـزَير

Ezra

The Qur'an points out that some Jews claimed that Ezra was a son of Allah. (9:30).

'uzuubah عزوبة

celibacy

Celibacy is not recommended by Islam, since it is considered against human nature.

'uzzaa (al--) العُزّى

the 'Uzza

One of the female deities worshipped by the pagan Arabs.

W

waaHid (al--) الواحد

The One

A Divine Attribute of Allah. The One Who is Absolute in oneness and uniqueness and has no partners.

waa'iZ (pl. wu''aaZ) واعظ (وعاظ)

preacher

Someone who gives sermons or preaches to others.

waajib [1] واجب [1]

obligatory

Required by the religion.

waajib [2] (pl. waajibaat) واجب [2] (واجبات)

duty, obligation

Something made obligatory by the religion.

waajib al-wujuud واجب الوجود

inevitably existing

The term is used to refer to Allah Whose existence is inevitable.

waajid (al--) الواجد

The Finder

A Divine Attribute of Allah. The One from Whom nothing is hidden or lost.

waal(in) (pl. wulaah) وال (ولاة)

governor

A governor appointed by a caliph or king to rule a certain part of the country.

waalii (al--) الوالي

The Patron

A Divine Attribute of Allah. The Bestower of bounties and protector from evils.

waaqa'a (yuwaaqi') واقع (يواقع)

to copulate

To have sexual intercourse with someone.

waarith (al--) الوارث

The Inheritor

A Divine Attribute of Allah. The True Inheritor of things, because He is the only Eternal Being.

waarith (pl. warathah) وارث (ورثة)

heir
Someone who inherits.

waasi' (al--) الواسع

The All-Embracing
A Divine Attribute of Allah. The One Whose knowledge and mercy embrace everyone and everything.

wa'd وعد

promise
Promise to do something good for someone.

wafaa' وفاء

fulfillment, loyalty
Fulfilling one's promise, or showing loyalty to someone.

wafaa' ad-dayn وفاء الدين

paying a debt
Paying back the money one borrowed from somebody.

wafaa' bin-nadhr وفاء بالنذر

fulfilling a vow
Doing the act one vows to do, such as fasting or giving out charity. However, if one vows to do something wrong

he should not do it, and atone for it instead. (See "kaffaarah").

wahhaab (al--) الوهّاب

The Highest Bestower
A Divine Attribute of Allah. The One Who gives with no bounds, and expects no reward from anyone.

wahhaabiy (pl. wahhaabiyyah) وهّابي (وهّابية)

Wahhabi
A follower of Sheikh Muhammad ibn Abdul-Wahhab of Najd, who was a Muslim revivalist that emphasized in his teachings the importance of fighting all sorts of "shirk" (polytheistic practices), such as worshipping saints and building mosques over their tombs.

wahhaabiyyah (al--) الوهّابية

Wahhabism
Teachings of Sheikh Muhammad ibn Abdul-Wahhab, a strict Islamic revivalist, which emphasized the return to the pristine

teachings of the religion and fighting all sorts of poytheistic practices.

wa'iid وعيد

warning

Warning or threat to do something bad to someone.

wajh allaah 1 وجه الله 1

pleasure of Allah

We find this phrase in expressions like "li-wajhi-llaah" (for the sake of Allah) and "ibtighaa' wajhi-llaah" (seeking the pleasure of Allah).

wajh allaah 2 وجه الله 2

the Face of Allah

The direction which Allah has accepted for you. (See the Qur'an, 2: 115).

wakaalah وكالة

proxy, power of attorney

Appointing someone to act on one's behalf, giving him the power of attorney.

wakiil (al--) الوكيل

The Ever-Trustee

A Divine Attribute of Allah. The One Whom we should always trust, and Who takes care of us.

wakiil (pl. wulalaa') وكيل (وكلاء)

proxy, agent

Someone who has legal authority to represent someone else. Sometimes, we have "al-wakiil ash-shar'iyy" (legal representative') to emphasize this aspect of legality.

walaa' (al--) الولاء

loyalty, show of solidarity

The term is sometimes used in the sense of a Muslim's show of solidarity in his relationship with other Muslims, considering them as brothers and friends, different from non-Muslims.

waliimah (pl. walaa'im) وليمة (ولائم)

wedding banquet / party

It is recommended for a Muslim to have a wedding party as a means of announcing the marriage.

Invited people are urged to attend it.

waliyy (al--) الولي

The Ever-Patronizing

A Divine Attribute of Allah. The One Who patronizes His loyal servants and protects them.

waliyy (pl. awliyaa')

ولي (أولياء)

holy man, man of Allah

This is the Islamic equivalent to a 'saint'. A "waliyy" is a man of high integrity and is devoted to worshipping Allah. Sometimes, a man of Allah may be given special unusual abilities, called "karaamaat". (See "karaamah").

waliyy (pl. 'waliyaa') al-'amr

ولي (أولياء) الأمر

guardian, person in charge

This term means both the person in charge of the community as well as a guardian of a person.

waqf (pl. 'awqaaf)

وقف (أوقاف)

endowment

Allocating part of one's possession for a certain good purpose; it should not be sold or disposed of except under the conditions stipulated by the endowing person, or with the aim of perpetuating it.

waqfah (pl. waqfaat)

وقفة (وقفات)

in tajweed, a pause or stop while reciting the Qur'an.

waqfah (al--) الوقفة

stay

See "al-wuquuf bi-'arafah". Some people loosely use the term to refer to the day that immediately precedes the "'iid", whether it is the "'iid al-aDHaa" or "'iid al-fiTr".

waswasah (pl. wasaawis)

وسوسة (وساوس)

evil suggestion

Often this term refers to the bad suggestions made by Satan to mislead people into

doing forbidden things. It is also used to mean constant doubting.

waT' وطء

copulation

Having sexual intercourse.

wathan (pl. awthaan) وثن (أوثان)

idol

A statue or icon polytheists pray to or worship.

wathaniyy وثني

idol worshipper

A person who worships idols.

wathaniyyah وثنية

idolatry

The practice of worshipping idols, statues, icons and the like.

waduud (al--) الودود

The Most Loving and Beloved

A Divine Attribute: One Who loves the believers and is beloved by them. (See the Qur'an 11:90 and 85:14).

wa'Z وعظ

preaching

Offering advice and giving warning to others for doing wrong things.

Wilaayah ولاية

guardianship, wardship

The power and/or responsibility to supervise the affairs of someone else.

wisq (pl. 'awsuq) وسق (أوساق)

wisq

A unit of measurement of quantity used for food. It is equivalent to 60 "Saa's". (See "Saa'").

witr وتر

odd in number

Of odd number, usually one or three. The term "al-witr" may be short for "Salaat al-witr".

wuDuu' وضوء

ablution

Washing the hands, rinsing the mouth, sniffing water and rinsing the nostrils, washing the face, washing the arms up to the elbow, wiping the head with wet hands and washing the feet. All of these, with the exception of wiping the head,

are done three times, starting with the right hand side first.

wuquuf وقوف

standing

Standing position in formal prayers during which one would normally read at least "suurat al-faatiHah" (Opening Chapter of the Qur'an).

wuquuf (al--) bi'arafah

الوقوف بعرفة

stay at Arafah

Staying at the plain of 'Arafah on the ninth day of the month of pilgrimage (Dhul-Hijjah) is considered the most important single rite of "Hajj". A pilgrim should stay there until sunset, then he moves to "Muzdalifah".

Y

yaghuuth يغوث

Yaghooth

The name of a deity worshipped by the people of Prophet Noah. (See the Qur'an 71:23)

yahuud (sg. yahuudiyy)

يهود (يهوديّ)

Jews

See "yahuudiyy".

yahuudiyy (pl. yahuud)

يهوديّ (يهود)

Jew

A member of the Jewish faith. According to Islam, Jews are members of the 'people of the Scripture'.

yahuudiyyah (al--) اليهوديّة

Judaism

The religion originally taught by the Prophet Moses, but greatly tampered with after him . Its holy scripture is "at-tawraah".

yaHyaa يحيى

John

A prophet of Allah, son of Zachariah born to him miraculously, since his father was very old and his mother barren. (See the Qur'an, 19: 2-15).

ya'juuj wa ma'juuj

يأجوج ومأجوج

Gog magog

A nation of a highly destructive force. (See the Qur'an, 18: 94).

yalamlam يلملم

Yalamlam

The name of a port in Yemen where all prospective pilgrims from Yemen or those passing by it should start their status of "iHraam".

yamiin [1] يمين [1]

right hand side

A Muslim should start all important and good things with the right hand side or do them with the right hand, such as greeting, eating and

drinking with the right hand, or with the right foot first, such as entering a mosque. Believers are called "aSHaab al-yamiin" (people of the right hand), because they are handed their records of deeds in their right hands on the Day of Judgement.

yamiin [2] (pl. aymaan) (أيمان) يمين 2

oath

In Islam an oath should be in Allah's name only; i.e., one should not swear except to Allah.

yamiin al-laghw يمين اللغو

unintentional oath

An oath said in passing without the intention of swearing to Allah, such as saying, "wa-llaah"… just to emphasize an invitation to something, for example. No expiation is required if this type of oath is not fulfilled.

yamiin ghamuus يمين غموس

false oath

An oath made to deceive the hearer and convince him of a lie. It is called "ghamuus" because it causes the person who makes it to be 'dipped' in Hell-Fire.

yaqiin (al--) اليقين

certitude

Absolute certainty. In the Qur'an, sometimes we find the phrase "Haqq al-yaqiin" (real certainty).

ya'quub يعقوب

Jacob

The Prophet Jacob whose name was also "israa'iil" (servant of Allah / Israel). He is the son of Isaac and grandson of the Prophet Abraham. Jews are often called 'children of Israel' in the Qur'an.

yathrib يثرِب

Medina

The old name for the city later called "al-madiinah" (the city (of the Prophet {PBUH}).

yatiim/ah (pl. aytaam)

يتيم (أيتام)

Orphan

A child who has lost its father especially. The Qur'an and the sunnah strongly recommend kindness and fair treatment of orphans, even sponsoring their upbringing.

ya'uuq يعوق

Ya'ooq

The name of a deity worshipped by the people of Prophet Noah. (See the Qur'an 71:23)

yawm (pl. ayyaam) يوم (أيام)

day

In Islamic texts, this word is frequently used in the sense of day as opposed to night. (See "yawm wa laylah").

yawm ad-diin يوم الدّين

the Day of Judgement

The Day on which people will be resurrected and judged according to their deeds in the present life. (See, for example, the Qur'an, 82).

yawm (al--) al-'aakhar

اليوم الآخر

the Last Day

The Day of Judgement.

yawm al-ba'th يوم البَعث

Day of Resurrection

The day on which all creatures are resurrected and made to account for their actions in this world. See "al-qiyaamah" (the Resurrection).

yawm al-faSl يوم الفصل

Day of Judgment

The Day of Judgment on which the doers of good are separated from the wrong doers.

yawm al-Hashr يوم الحَشر

the Day of Gathering

The day when the whole creation will be resurrected and gathered together for the Judgement. (See "al-qiyaamah").

yawm al-Hisaab يوم الحساب

the Day of Reckoning

The Day when everyone will

see records of all his deeds, and will be asked to account for them. (See, for example, the Qur'an, 38: 49-64).

yawm al-jam' يوم الجمع

Day of Gathering

The Day of Resurrection when all creatures are gathered for the Judgment.

yawm an-naHr يوم النّحر

Day of Sacrifice

The tenth day of "Dhul-Hijjah" (month of pilgrimage), on which a Muslim starts offering his sacrifice. One may slaughter the sacrifice on this and the following three days. Originally, "naHr" means slaughtering a camel.

yawm al-qiyaamah يوم القيامة

Day of Resurrection

See "al-qiyaamah".

yawm at-tarwiyah يوم التّروية

eighth of Dhul-Hijjah

The eighth day of the month of pilgrimage when pilgrims go to Mina.

yawm al-waqfah يوم الوقفة

Day of Stand in Arafah

The ninth day of Dhul-Hijjah (month of pilgrimage) on which pilgrims stay in the plain of 'Arafah until sunset, then move to Muzdalifah.

yawm wa laylah يوم وليلة

one day and night

Twenty-four hours. Yawm is used here to mean daylight, as opposed to night. The other more specific word for day (as opposed to night) is "nahaar" which means the time between dawn and sunset.

yuHtaDar يحتضر

to approach death

To be on deathbed. It is sunnah that when a Muslim is in such a condition we should prompt him to say the "shahaadah" so that it would be his last words.

yuunus يونس

Jonah

A prophet of Allah who was swallowed by a whale and returned to land safely by Allah's Will. He is also referred to in the Qur'an as "dhu-nnuun" (man of the fish / whale). (See the Qur'an, 37: 139-147 and 21: 87-88, where you find his famous prayer of distress).

yuusuf يوسف

Joseph

The Prophet Joseph, son of the Prophet Jacob, exemplar for his beauty, chastity and his knowledge of interpreting dreams. (See the Qur'an, Chapter of Joseph (12) for his story).

Z

Zaahara (yuZaahir)

ظاهر (يظاهر)

to declare zhihar

See "Zihaar".

zaahid زاهد

ascetic

A person who lives an ascetic way of life. (See "zuhd"). To such a person life in this world is a journey to the everlasting life of the Hereafter; the lighter the load, the easier and safer the trip is.

Zaahir (aZ--) الظّاهر

The Obvious

A Divine Attribute of Allah. The One Who is Most Obvious through His creation and deeds, because they are all absolute proofs and signs of His existence.

Zaalim ظالم

aggressor

zaaniy/ah (pl. zunaah)

زاني/ة (زناة)

fornicator, adulterer

A person who commits an illicit sexual relation, male or female. (See "zinaa" for comments.)

zaawiyah زاوية

mosque-school

Literally, the word means a corner or nook. In some Muslim countries, there were some small mosques built near or over the tomb of a 'saint' and used for teaching, with a housing facility attached to it. Often, they were maintained by sufi orders.

zabaaniyat jahannam

زبانية جهنّم

guards of Hell

Angels in charge of carrying out the punishment of the sinners and disbelievers in Hell.

zabuur (az--) الزّبور

Psalms

The scripture that was revealed to the Prophet Daawuud (David).

zakaa (yazkuu) زكا (يزكو)

to be pure

This is the intransitive form of "zakkaa".

zakaah زكاة

alms, poor dues

The obligatory poor dues that a Muslim should pay to certain categories of people in the community, including the poor, the needy, the way-farer… Paying the "zakaah" is one of the five pillars of Islam.

zakaat al-fiTr زكاة الفطر

breaking the fast poor due

The charity that one should give to the poor before one attends the "'iid" service at the end of Ramadan. It consists of about 2 kilograms of wheat, rice, other grains, or "iqT" (dried yogurt curds) for each member of the household.

zakaat al-maal زكاة المال

alms on wealth

In simple terms, this means the alms one should pay on the savings one has for one year, if it exceeds the "niSaab". It is two and a half percent of those savings.

zakariyyaa زكريّا

Zachariah

The name of a prophet, father of the Prophet YaHyaa (John) and guardian of Mary. See reference to them in the Qur'an, 3: 37-41 and 19: 2-15).

zakkaa 1 (yuzakkii) زكّى 1 (يزكّي)

give alms / pay zakat

To pay the obligatory poor dues known as alms or "zakaah".

zakkaa 2 (yuzakkii) زكّى 2 (يزكّي)

vouch for someone

To bear witness that someone

is good or praise him. This also applies to oneself; hence, we have "zakkaa nafsahu" meaning that he claimed to be good or better than others. (See the Qur'an, 53: 32).

zamzam زمزم

Zamzam

The blessed well of Zamzam in the Holy Mosque of Makkah. Tradition has it that the spring of water first came out at the feet of Ishmael when he was a baby, left with his mother Hager, by his father Abraham in the area known today as Makkah. The Prophet Abraham (PBUH) was carrying out Divine orders. He prayed for that barren valley to be a blessed one. While Hager was frantically looking for something for her baby water sprang from beneath his feet. This is the origin of the Well of Zamzam whose water is considered blessed by all Muslims.

zandaqah زندقة

heresy

Holding religious views contradictory to the teachings of Islam.

zandiiq زنديق (زنادقة)

Heretic

A person who believes in and/or calls to ideas and beliefs that are contrary to Islamic teachings.

zaquum زقوم

zaqquum tree

A most hateful type of tree in Hell offered as food for the unbelievers and sinners. (See, e.g., the Qur'an 37: 62-65; 44: 43-46.)

zawaaj زواج

marriage

Marriage is a strongly recommended "sunnah" for both the protection of individuals from illicit sexual relations and propagation.

zawaaj al-mut'ah

زواج المتعة

temporary marriage

Literally, this means 'marriage for pleasure'. The Prophet (PBUH)

declared the illegality of a marriage in which the duration is stipulated in the wedding.

zawaaj / nikaaH ash-shighaar زواج / نكاح الشغار

mutual marriage

An arrangement in which a guardian of a female agrees to marry off his trustee to another person in exchange for the other guardian of a female to give his trustee to him in marriage, without either paying the necessary "Sadaaq" (dower). This is forbidden in Islam, because it deprives the brides of their rights to the dower.

zawaal ash-shams

زوال الشمس

high noon

The time when the sun crosses the local meridian. It is forbidden for a Muslim to pray at this time. The real time of noon prayer ("Salaat al-Zuhr") starts after this.

zawj (pl. 'azwaaj)

زوج (أزواج)

spouse

In the Qur'an this word is used for both male and female spouse. Later, people used the word "zawjah" (wife) to distinguish female from male spouse. This word is used in later Arabic to mean a pair, which is in the Qur'an is "zajwjaan".

zawjaan زوجان

pair

In Qur'anic Arabic the word means a pair, not two pairs as many people may understand.

zaydiyyah زيدية

Zaydi Shi'ites

A Shi'ite sub-sect. Those who claim to follow Zaid the son of Ali ibn al-Hussain instead of the other son Ja'far aS-Saadiq (called "Ja'fariyyah"). This sect is especially dominant in Yemen.

Zihaar ظهار

zhihar

An old Arab practice, similar to divorce, in which a man says to his wife, "You are like my mother's back to me." (See reference to this in the Qur'an, 58: 1-4).

Zinaa زنى / زنا

fornication, adultery

In Islamic terms, any sexual act between a male and female outside wedlock is called "zinaa". It is considered one of the major sins (kabiirah), the punishment for which depends on the persons involved, whether they have been previously married or not.

zuhd زهد

asceticism

Living the simplest way of life with the barest of necessities.

Zuhr (aZ--) الظهر

noon

Noon prayer time starts a few minutes after mid-day.

Zulm ظلم

injustice, aggression

Injustice and unfair dealing is forbidden in Islam, even when a Muslim is dealing with non-Muslims or enemies. (See "'adl").

Arabic Index

فهرس باللُّغة العَرَبيّة

ف

خ

Arabic Index

فهرس باللُّغة العَرَبِيَّة

This dictionary is intended to satisfy a long-standing need on the part of English-speaking Muslims for a dictionary with which to comprehend what they do not fully understand when they read the Noble Qur'an and the authentic Sunnah. During the past twenty-five years progress has been made in the field of Islamic lexicography; and this has highlighted the need for documentation of Islamic words and expressions in a novel fashion.

This dictionary is also intended to fulfill the needs of those engaged in such a sacred task as propagating Islam, which requires a reliable bilingual dictionary that is apt to transfer-in a communicative manner - concepts underlying cultural differences between the two languages in question.

Translation Center - Al- Muntada Al- Islami
P.O.Box 26970 Riyadh 11496
Tel: 4641222 Fax : 4641446
E-Mail: al-muntada@hotmail.com

مطابع أضواء المنتدى
٢٤٣٤٩٢٥

ISBN 9960-718-30-1